



NATURAL

Natural Security

Version 5.1.1 for Windows

Version 3.1.5 for Mainframes

Version 5.1.1 for UNIX and OpenVMS

 **SOFTWARE AG**



This document applies to Natural Version 5.1.1 for Windows, Version 3.1.5 for Mainframes, Version 5.1.1 for UNIX and OpenVMS, and to all subsequent releases. Specifications contained herein are subject to change and these changes will be reported in subsequent release notes or new editions.

© March 2002, Software AG
All rights reserved

Software AG and/or all Software AG products are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Software AG. Other products and company names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

Table of Contents

Natural Security - Overview	1
Natural Security - Overview	1
Natural Security On Different Platforms	3
Natural Security On Different Platforms	3
Supported Platforms	3
Full Version	3
Runtime Version	3
Using Natural Security on Multiple Platforms	4
Protection of DDMs	4
Structure And Terminology Of Natural Security	5
Structure And Terminology Of Natural Security	5
Users	5
User Type MEMBER	6
User Type PERSON	6
User Type ADMINISTRATOR	6
User Type TERMINAL	7
User Type GROUP	8
User Type BATCH	8
Which User Type for Which User?	9
Libraries	10
Unprotected Libraries	10
Protected Libraries	10
Links Between Users and Libraries	10
DDMs/Files	10
File Status on Mainframes	10
Internal and External Status on Non-Mainframes	11
Utilities	12
Other Object Types	12
Logging On	13
Logging On	13
Logon Procedure	13
Logon Screen / Logon Dialog Box	14
Rejected Logon	15
Logon Without Library ID	16
"RESTART" and "FIN" as Library IDs	16
Successful Logon	16
LOGON Command	17
LOGON Command Errors	17
Automatic Logon	18
How to End a Natural Session	19
Finding Your Way In Natural Security	20
Finding Your Way In Natural Security	20
Pressing the ENTER Key	20
Help	20
Not Sure What to Enter?	20
Handling a List	21
Selecting the Range of Objects to be Listed	21
Scrolling a List	24
Selecting an Object from a List	24
Direct Commands	25
Available Commands	25
Abbreviating a Command	26
Command Examples	27

Special Commands	28
Administrator Services	29
Administrator Services	29
Access to Administrator Services	29
Set General Options	30
Transition Period Logon	30
Activate Security for Development Server File	32
Maximum Number of Logon Attempts	32
Suppress Display of Logon Messages	32
Lock User Option	32
User Password History	34
Free Access to Functions via Interface Subprograms	35
Minimum Number of Co-Owners	35
Deletion of Non-Empty Libraries Allowed	36
Overwriting of Defaults Possible	36
Display DBID/FNR of FSEC	36
Exit Functions with Confirmation	37
Logging of Maintenance Functions	37
Set Library and User Defaults	39
Library Defaults	40
User Defaults	42
Password Rules	43
Default User Profiles	44
How to Create a Default Profile	44
How to Use a Default Profile	45
Set PF-Keys	46
PF-Key Functions	46
PF-Key Names	49
Logon/Countersign Error Processing	50
Logon Errors	50
Locked Users	50
How to Invoke Logon/Countersign Error Processing	51
List Error Entries	51
Delete Error Entries	52
Display Individual Error Entries	52
List/Unlock Locked Users	52
Deleting All Error Entries - Direct Command ERRDEL	53
Logon Records Processing	54
How to Invoke Logon Records Processing	54
Functions of Logon Records Processing	54
Deleting All Logon Records - Direct Command LOGDEL	55
Definition of System Libraries	56
Processing of Maintenance Log Records	57
Display Status of Logging Function	57
List Administrator Services Maintenance Logs	57
List Security Profile Maintenance Logs	58
Log File Maintenance	58
List Last Logon Records	62
Definition of System File Access	63
How to Define the System File Access	63
Linking Users to a Protected System File	64
User Maintenance	65
User Maintenance	65
Before You Begin	65
How to Invoke User Maintenance	66
Components of a User Profile	66

Additional Options	71
Adding a New User	74
User ID	74
User Type	74
Default Profile	75
How to Add a New User	76
Adding Multiple New Users	77
Selecting Existing Users for Processing	78
Copying a User	80
What is Copied?	80
How to Copy	80
Modifying a User	82
Upgrading and Downgrading Users	82
User Locked?	83
Renaming a User	83
Deleting a User	84
Displaying a User	84
User Locked?	84
Editing Group Members	85
Library Maintenance	86
Library Maintenance	86
Before You Begin	86
How to Invoke Library Maintenance	86
Components of a Library Profile	87
General Options	89
Library File	90
Transactions	91
Additional Options	96
Adding a New Library	110
Library ID	110
Selecting Existing Libraries for Processing	111
Copying a Library	113
What is Copied?	113
How to Copy	113
Modifying a Library	113
Renaming a Library	113
Deleting a Library	114
Displaying a Library	114
Protecting Libraries	115
Protecting Libraries	115
Protected Libraries	115
Protection Combinations	115
Changing a Protection Combination	115
Linking Users to Libraries	117
Linking a Single User to Libraries	118
Linking Multiple Users to a Library	119
Special Links	120
Which Conditions of Use are in Effect?	121
PROFILE Command	122
Protecting DDMs On Mainframes	124
Protecting DDMs On Mainframes	124
Before You Begin	124
Invoking File Maintenance	124
Components of a File Profile	125
File Status	128
Additional Options	129

Selecting a File or DDM for Processing	130
Status as Selection Criterion	131
Selecting a Function	131
Add File	132
Copy File	132
What is Copied?	132
How to Copy	132
Modify File	133
Delete File	133
Display File	133
Linking Libraries To Files	134
Linking a Single Library to a File	134
Linking Multiple Libraries to a File	134
Possible Link Types	135
Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX And Windows	136
Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX And Windows	136
Status of a DDM	136
Internal Status	136
External Status	138
The Initial Status of a DDM	139
DDM Security Profiles	140
Components of a DDM Security Profile	140
Creating and Maintaining DDM Security Profiles	143
External Status as Selection Criterion	143
Selecting a Function	144
Add DDM Profile	144
Copy DDM Profile	145
What is Copied?	145
How to Copy	145
Modify DDM Profile	145
Delete DDM Profile	145
Display DDM Profile	146
Copy Link to All Special Links	146
Linking a Library to a Protected DDM	147
Protecting Natural Utilities	148
Protecting Natural Utilities	148
Which Utilities Can Be Protected?	148
Utility Profiles	149
Types of Utility Profiles	149
Default Utility Profile	149
User-Specific Utility Profiles	150
Library-Specific Utility Profiles	151
User-Library-Specific Utility Profiles	153
Which Utility Profile Applies?	155
When Does a Utility Profile Take Effect?	157
Further Utility Protection Considerations	157
Available System Commands	157
Where to Define Profiles?	157
Defining Default Profiles	158
Default Profile for NATLOAD Utility	160
Default Profile for NATUNLD Utility	161
Default Profile for SYSBPM Utility	161
Default Profile for SYSDDM Utility	164
Default Profile for SYSERR Utility	165
Default Profile for SYSMAIN Utility	166
Default Profile for SYSOBJH Utility	167

Default Profile for SYSPARM Utility	168
Default Profile for SYSRPC Utility	168
Default Profile for SYSTRANS Utility	169
Defining Individual Profiles - Utility Maintenance	170
How to Invoke Utility Maintenance	170
Utility Maintenance Functions	171
Adding a User-Specific Utility Profile	174
Modifying/Displaying a User-Specific Utility Profile	174
Deleting a User-Specific Utility Profile	174
Adding a Library-Specific Utility	175
Modifying/Displaying a Library-Specific Utility Profile	175
Deleting a Library-Specific Utility Profile	175
Adding a User-Library-Specific Utility Profile	176
Modifying/Displaying a User-Library-Specific Utility Profile	176
Deleting a User-Library-Specific Utility Profile	176
Protecting Natural Development Server Applications	177
Protecting Natural Development Server Applications	177
Application Protection	177
What are Applications?	177
Prerequisites	177
General Concept	178
Naming Conventions	178
Hierarchies of Application Profiles	178
Information for Predict Users	179
Defining and Activating Application Security	180
Special Considerations	180
Functions MOVE, COPY and DELETE	180
Commands LIST DDM and EDIT DDM	180
How to Invoke Application Maintenance	180
Components of an Application Profile	181
Components of a Base Application Profile	181
Components of a Compound Application Profile	183
Additional Options	184
Selecting an Application for Processing	185
Status as Selection Criterion	186
Selecting a Function	186
Adding a New Application Profile	187
Adding a Profile for an Existing Application	187
Adding a Profile for a Non-Existing Application	187
Copying an Application Profile	188
What is Copied?	188
How to Copy	188
Modifying an Application Profile	188
Renaming an Application Profile	188
Deleting an Application Profile	189
Displaying an Application Profile	189
Linking Users to Applications	189
Linking a Single User to Applications	190
Linking Multiple Users to an Application	191
Protecting External Objects	193
Protecting External Objects	193
Types of External Objects	193
Predict Objects	193
Other Objects	193
How to Invoke Maintenance for External Objects	194
Components of an External Object's Security Profile	194

Default Access	195
Additional Options	196
IDs for External Objects	197
Asterisk Notation	197
Adding a New External Object	197
Selecting Existing External Objects for Processing	197
Copying an External Object	198
What is Copied?	199
How to Copy	199
Modifying an External Object	199
Renaming an External Object	199
Deleting an External Object	199
Displaying an External Object	200
Linking Users to External Objects	200
Linking a Single User to External Objects	201
Linking Multiple Users to an External Object	202
Mailboxes	205
Mailboxes	205
What is a Mailbox?	205
How to Invoke Mailbox Maintenance	205
Components of a Mailbox Profile	206
Broadcasting a Message	209
Receiving a Message	209
Mailbox ID	210
Mailbox for Initial Logon	210
Adding a New Mailbox	210
Selecting Existing Mailboxes for Processing	211
Copying a Mailbox	212
What is Copied?	212
How to Copy	212
Modifying a Mailbox	212
Renaming a Mailbox	212
Deleting a Mailbox	213
Displaying a Mailbox	213
Retrieval	214
Retrieval	214
Purpose of Retrieval Functions	214
How to Invoke Retrieval Functions	214
Cross-Reference User	215
Cross-Reference Library	215
Cross-Reference File	216
Cross-Reference Utility	216
Cross-Reference Application	216
Cross-Reference External Object	217
Cross-Reference Mailbox	217
Retrieval in Batch Mode - Program RETRIEVE	217
Countersignatures	219
Countersignatures	219
Using Owners	219
Using Countersignatures	219
Groups as Owners	222
Groups as Co-Owners	222
User Security Profiles of ADMINISTRATORS	223
Inaccessible Security Profiles	223
Functional Security	224
Functional Security	224

Command Processors	224
Functional Security for a Command Processor	224
Status of a Command Processor	225
Allowing/Disallowing Keywords	225
How to Define Functional Security for a Library	226
Functional Security Defined	226
Keyword Default	227
Keyword Exceptions	227
Command Exceptions	229
Type of Command Exceptions	229
How to Define Functional Security for a User	230
Functional Security Defined	231
Keyword Default/Keyword Exceptions/Command Exceptions/Type of Command Exceptions	231
Functional Security for Library SYSSEC	231
Private Libraries	232
Private Libraries	232
What is a Private Library?	232
Defining Private Libraries	232
Deleting Private Libraries	233
Logon to a Private Library	233
Relationships between Private Libraries and DDMs/Files	233
Libraries and Files - on Mainframes	233
Libraries and DDMs - on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows	233
Natural Security In Batch Mode	234
Natural Security In Batch Mode	234
General Information on Batch Mode	234
Logon in Batch Mode	234
Password Change in Batch Mode	235
Automatic Logon in Batch Mode	235
Batch User Security Profiles	235
Startup Transaction in Batch Mode	236
Mailboxes in Batch Mode	236
Transferring Security Data To Another System File	237
Transferring Security Data To Another System File	237
General Information	237
Using SECULD	238
Using SECLOAD	240
Transferring Data to Another Hardware Platform	241
Transferring Data from Version 2.1 on OpenVMS and UNIX	242
Unloading in the Version 2.1 Environment	242
Loading in the Version 4.1 Environment	242
Transferring Data from Version 3.1 on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows NT	242
Transferring Data in Batch Mode	243
Examples of SECULD/SECLOAD in Batch Mode on Mainframes	243
User Exits	246
User Exits	246
Logon-Related User Exits	246
LOGONEX1	246
LOGONEX2	246
LOGONEX3	247
SECNOTE - User Exit for Security Notes	248
Other User Exits	249
Interface Subprograms	250
Interface Subprograms	250
Overview of Subprograms	250
Subprogram NSC---L	252

Subprogram NSCCHCK	252
Subprogram NSCDA	252
Subprogram NSCDA-C	253
Subprogram NSCDA-P	253
Subprogram NSCDA-S	253
Subprogram NSCDAU	254
Subprogram NSCDAUC	254
Subprogram NSCDAUP	254
Subprogram NSCDAUS	255
Subprogram NSCDEF	255
Subprogram NSCDU	255
Subprogram NSCFI	256
Subprogram NSCLI	257
Subprogram NSCMA	259
Subprogram NSCOB	260
Subprogram NSCUS	261
Subprogram NSCXR	262
Add-On Products And Plug-Ins	267
Add-On Products And Plug-Ins	267
Plug-Ins under Natural Security	267
Library Profiles for System Libraries	267
User Profiles	267
Natural Parameter File	267
SYSDIC under Natural Security	268
SYSAOS under Natural Security	269
System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism	270
System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism	270
NATUNLD/NATLOAD under Natural Security	270
Restricting the Use of NATUNLD/NATLOAD Itself	270
Unloading/Loading of Libraries/Private Libraries	270
SYSERR under Natural Security	271
Restricting the Use of SYSERR Itself	271
Message Maintenance in Libraries/Private Libraries	271
SYSMAIN under Natural Security	273
Restricting the Use of SYSMAIN Itself	273
SYSMAIN Maintenance of Libraries/Private Libraries	273
SCAN Command under Natural Security	275
SCAN Permission for Libraries	275
SCAN Permission for Private Libraries	275

Natural Security - Overview

This documentation describes all functions and aspects of usage of Natural Security. It applies to Natural Security on all supported platforms.

This documentation is intended for users of Natural Security, that is, users who are to be defined in Natural Security as users of type "ADMINISTRATOR". The reader is assumed to be familiar with and have a good general understanding of Natural.

● Natural Security On Different Platforms	Considerations for the use of Natural Security on different platforms, and the differences between these platforms.
● Structure And Terminology Of Natural Security	Basic concepts of Natural Security.
● Logging On	Rules that apply when a user logs on to Natural under Natural Security.
● Finding Your Way In Natural Security	Various aspects of finding your way within the Natural Security user interface.
● Administrator Services	Description of the set of functions of the Administrator Services subsection of Natural Security.
● User Maintenance	Creation and maintenance of user security profiles.
● Library Maintenance	Creation and maintenance of library security profiles.
● Protecting Libraries	How to control the access of users to protected libraries.
● Protecting DDMs On Mainframes	How to control the use of DDMs on mainframe computers.
● Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX And Windows	How to control the use of DDMs on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows.
● Protecting Natural Utilities	How to control the use of various Natural utilities.
● Protecting Natural Development Server Applications	How to control the use of Natural Development Server base applications and compound applications.
● Protecting External Objects	How to control the use of external objects.
● Mailboxes	How to maintain mailboxes.
● Retrieval	How to review the existing security profile definitions and their effects.
● Countersignatures	How administrators control each other.
● Functional Security	How to restrict the availability of certain functions and how to make different functions available for different users.
● Private Libraries	How to define private libraries.
● Natural Security In Batch Mode	How to use Natural Security in batch mode.
● Transferring Security Data To Another System File	How to transfer Natural Security data from one system file to another.
● User Exits	Information on the available user exits.
● Interface Subprograms	The subprograms which may be used to perform Natural Security functions from outside the Natural Security library SYSSEC.
● Add-On Products And Plug-Ins	Considerations for the protection of various add-on products and plug-ins.
● System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism	Describes the old protection mechanism for controlling Natural utilities.

For information on how to install Natural Security, see your Natural Installation Guide.

For information on changes, enhancements and new features provided with this version, see the Natural Release Notes.

Natural Security On Different Platforms

This section covers the following topics:

- Supported Platforms
 - Using Natural Security on Multiple Platforms
-

Supported Platforms

Natural Security is available on the following platforms:

- mainframe computers,
- OpenVMS,
- UNIX,
- Windows 98, Windows NT and Windows 2000.

Natural Security is available as a full version and as a runtime version.

Full Version

Normally, Natural Security is installed as a full version comprising the complete functionality of Natural Security. The full version can be installed on all platforms - except on Windows 98, where only the runtime version is available.

The full version comprises the entire runtime functionality as well as the full administrative and maintenance functionality. In the application SYSSEC it provides all functions for the online administration and maintenance of Natural Security data, and for the creation and evaluation of access logs, as well as interface subprograms for the retrieval and maintenance of Natural Security data.

Runtime Version

On the Windows 98 platform, which is not suited to the stand-alone operation of Natural, however, Natural Security is installed as a runtime-only version, which only contains the functionality necessary to enable user authentication and access control of Natural resources: it includes the logon procedure, which performs user authentication and verification of access rights when a user logs on to a Natural session, plus the procedures which perform access control to check whether a user has permission to perform the desired functions within a Natural session. In addition, retrieval functions provided by the Natural Security interface subprograms are available.

As the runtime version does not include any maintenance capability, it requires access to a Natural Security system file (FSEC) on another platform. Thus, a runtime version can only be used in combination with a full version installed on one of the other platforms.

Using Natural Security on Multiple Platforms

In a heterogeneous, multiple-platform Natural environment, the administration and retrieval of Natural Security data has to be taken into consideration. It is possible to set up a separate Natural Security system file (FSEC) for each installation, and maintain each FSEC system file independently.

It is also possible to set up a single FSEC system file in which all Natural Security data are stored centrally. The Natural Security installations have to be connected in a network with Entire Net-Work. Access to the centrally stored security data is handled by Entire Net-Work by means of remote database calls.

If the multiple-platform configuration does not include a mainframe, the FSEC system file can be located and the Natural Security data maintained on any of the (full version) installations; however, it is recommended that you maintain them on the installation where the FSEC system file is local.

If the multiple-platform configuration includes a mainframe, the FSEC system file must be located and the Natural Security data maintained on the mainframe. On the non-mainframe installations, the maintenance of Natural Security data is then automatically disabled.

For details on how to set up Natural Security in a heterogeneous environment, see the Natural Security installation description in your Natural Installation Guide.

In a heterogeneous production environment using a central mainframe FUSER system file, a library which does not exist on the mainframe FUSER system file but in the file system on another platform would not be known to Natural Security on the mainframe. To be able to define "non-existent" modules contained in such a library, the Disallow/Allow Modules function provides the subfunction "Free List of Modules" (which is described in the section Library Maintenance).

Protection of DDMs

Natural's storage location for DDMs is not the same on all platforms: on mainframe computers, DDMs are stored in an FDIC system file, whereas on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows, DDMs are contained in libraries like other Natural objects. Therefore, Natural Security's handling of the DDM protection is also different:

- On mainframe computers, DDMs are treated as separate objects (called "files"), which have their own security profiles.
- On the non-mainframe platforms, the protection of DDMs is subordinate to the protection of libraries, and DDM security profiles are subordinate to library security profiles.

For further information on, see DDM/Files in the section Structure And Terminology Of Natural Security.

In a heterogeneous environment where a central FSEC system file on a mainframe is used, all DDMs on the non-mainframe platforms must be transferred to the library SYSTEM in order to enable their use under Natural Security.

Structure And Terminology Of Natural Security

This section describes the basic concepts of Natural Security. It covers the following topics:

- Users
- Libraries
- Links Between Users and Libraries
- DDMs/Files
- Utilities
- Applications
- Other Object Types

Natural Security is a comprehensive system to control and check the access to a Natural environment. Natural Security enables you to protect your Natural environment against unauthorized access and improper use.

You may define exactly who will be allowed to do what. You may restrict the use of whole libraries and Natural utilities, as well as individual programs, functions and DDMs. You may further define the conditions and times of use. Thus you may provide a custom-made Natural environment for each individual user.

This is accomplished by defining objects and the relationships between these objects. Objects are defined to Natural Security by creating a *security profile* for each object.

There are four main types of objects which can be defined under Natural Security:

- users
 - libraries
 - DDMs/files
 - utilities
-

Users

Users can be either people or terminals - or groups of people and/or terminals - who use Natural under Natural Security. When a user is defined, a *user type* classification has to be made. This classification pre-determines the user's possibilities of using libraries.

People may be defined as one of the following user types:

- MEMBER
- PERSON
- ADMINISTRATOR

Terminals may be defined as the user type:

- TERMINAL

Users of the above types may be joined in groups which will be defined as the user type:

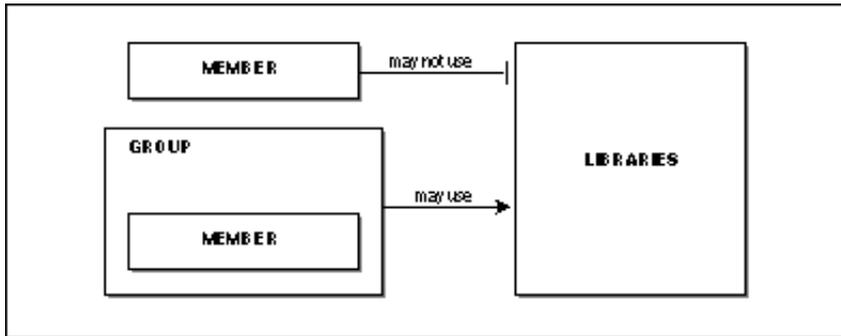
- GROUP

In addition, the following user type is available for usage in batch mode:

- BATCH

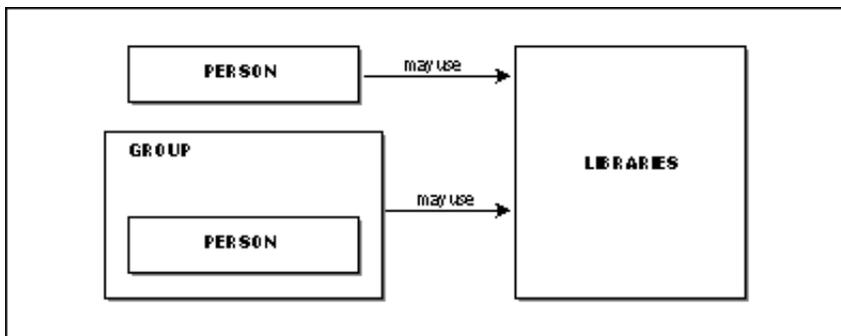
User Type MEMBER

MEMBERS cannot use libraries directly. They may only use libraries through membership in GROUPS. Therefore they have to be assigned to at least one GROUP so as to be able to use any library. Normally, this is the standard user type which will apply to most people.



User Type PERSON

PERSONS may use libraries directly. They may also be assigned to GROUPS. Thus, they may use libraries either directly or through membership in GROUPS. This user type is designed for people who are to have special, individually defined access rights to libraries.

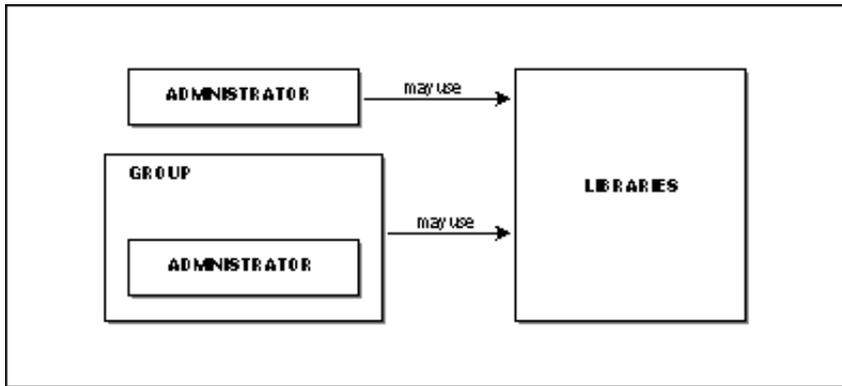


User Type ADMINISTRATOR

ADMINISTRATORS may use libraries directly. They may also be assigned to GROUPS. Thus, they may use libraries either directly or through membership in GROUPS. In this respect they are like PERSONS.

However, only ADMINISTRATORS may maintain Natural Security, that is, create and modify the security profiles of objects and the relationships between these objects.

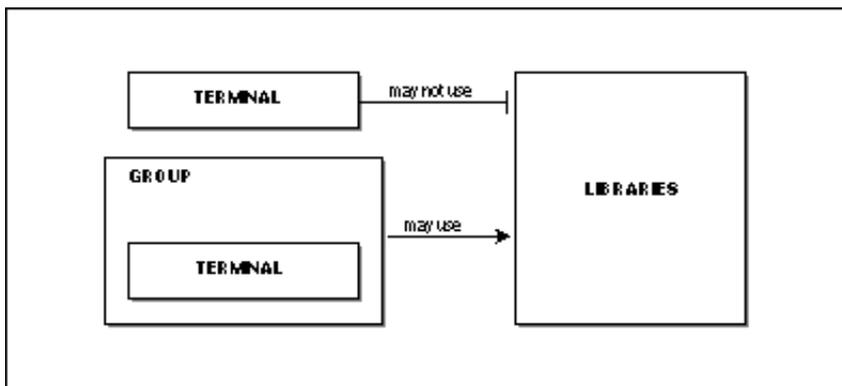
This user type is only for those users who are to be system administrators of Natural Security.



User Type TERMINAL

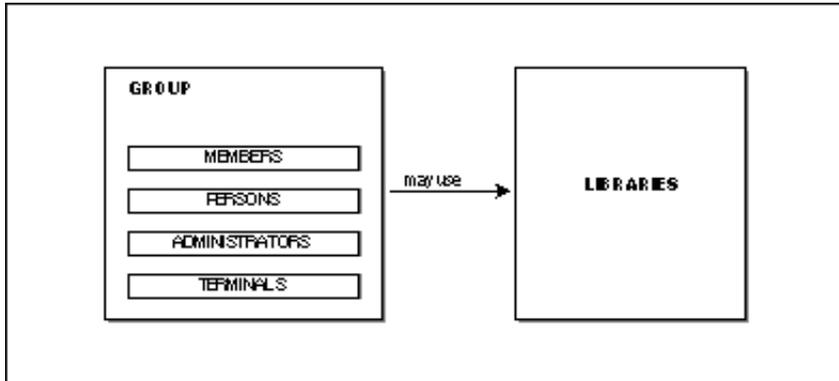
This user type applies to terminals only. Terminals do not necessarily have to be defined. The definition of terminals becomes relevant only in connection with libraries which are to be used from certain terminals only.

TERMINALS cannot use these libraries directly, but only through membership in GROUPS. Therefore, TERMINALS have to be assigned to at least one GROUP.



User Type GROUP

GROUPs may be created to allow easier Natural Security maintenance. A GROUP may contain users of any of the other user types. However, a GROUP must not contain another GROUP. Users may be contained in more than one GROUP.



Access rights to libraries may be defined for a GROUP and will then apply for all users contained in the same GROUP, thus saving the effort of having to define them for each user individually. (For ADMINISTRATORS and PERSONS contained in GROUPs, individual access rights different from those of the GROUPs they are in may optionally be defined.)

User Type BATCH

The user type BATCH only applies in batch mode, and is only used if users are to use Natural under different conditions in batch mode than online.

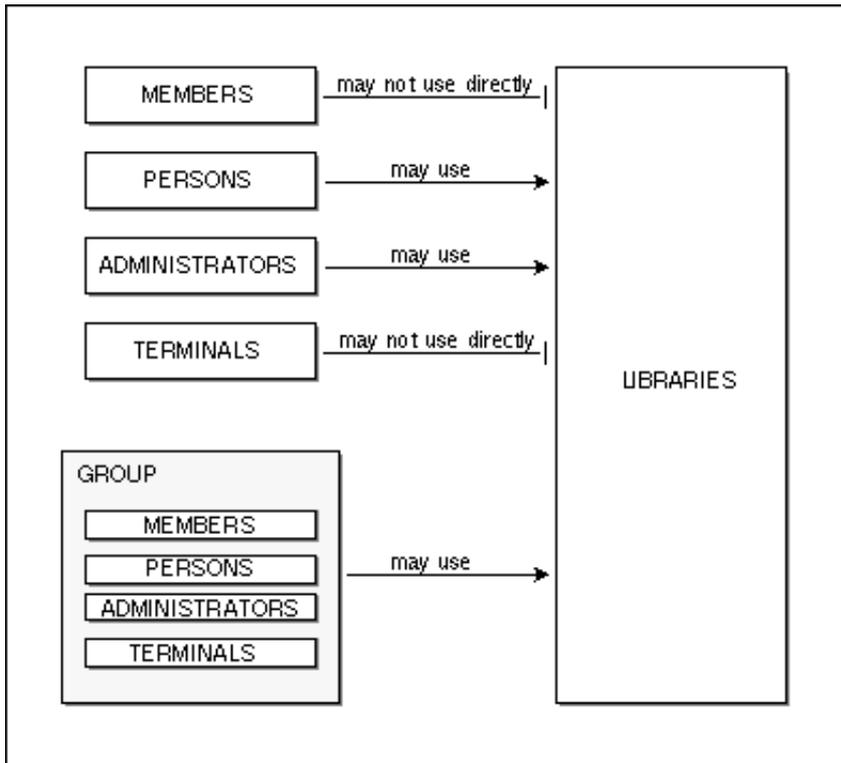
It cannot be compared directly with the other user types, and is only mentioned here for the sake of completeness. For details on this user type, see Batch User Security Profiles in the section Natural Security In Batch Mode.

Which User Type for Which User?

It is generally best to initially define all people as MEMBERS. If need be, a MEMBER may at a later stage be changed to a PERSON. MEMBERS and PERSONs may also be "promoted" to become ADMINISTRATORS.

Every user should be assigned to at least one GROUP.

To recapitulate, the user types basically differ from each other as far as their access to libraries is concerned. The possible relationships are summarized in the following diagram:



Libraries

Libraries are Natural libraries which contain sets of source programs and/or object modules which perform a particular function.

Libraries may be defined as *protected* or *unprotected*.

Unprotected Libraries

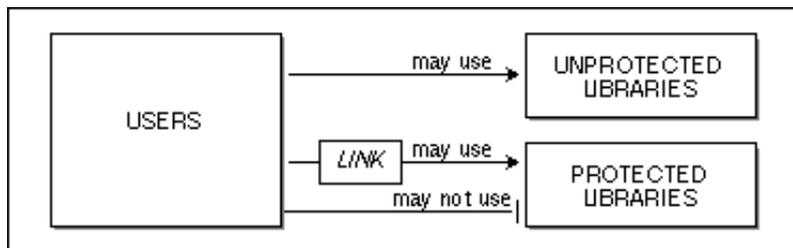
These may be used by any user without a special relationship having to be defined. (Remember that only users of type ADMINISTRATOR or PERSON may use libraries directly. MEMBERS and TERMINALS may use libraries only through membership in a GROUP.)

Protected Libraries

These may be used only by users who have a special relationship to the libraries. This special relationship is called *link*.

Links Between Users and Libraries

A *link* is the relationship between a user (user type ADMINISTRATOR, PERSON, or GROUP) and a protected library which allows the user to use the library.



The various types of library protections and links to libraries are described in the section Protecting Libraries.

DDMs/Files

The protection of DDMs is different depending on what platform you use. This is because with Natural on non-mainframe platforms, DDMs are stored in libraries, whereas with Natural on mainframe computers, DDMs are stored in an FDIC system file and not directly related to a library. See also the section Natural Security On Different Platforms.

On mainframe computers, a DDM must be defined as a *file* to Natural Security before it can be used under Natural Security, that is, a so-called *file security profile* must be created for the DDM. On non-mainframe platforms, a *DDM security profile* is created, which is subordinate to the security profile of the library containing the DDM.

For every DDM, a *status* classification has to be made in Natural Security. This status determines if the DDM can be used, that is, referenced in a database access statement within a Natural program.

File Status on Mainframes

On mainframes, a DDM has only one *file status* (which is set in its file security profile), which may be one of the following:

PUBLIC	The DDM is not protected. It can be used - that is, read and updated - by any library.
ACCESS	The DDM is protected as far as update is concerned. It can be read by any library. It may, however, be updated only by libraries which have been <i>linked</i> to it.
PRIVATE	The DDM is protected. It can be used only by libraries which have been <i>linked</i> to it. Such a link may be defined as "read" (that is, read only) or "update" (which implies read).

For details, see the section Protecting DDMs On Mainframes.

Internal and External Status on Non-Mainframes

On non-mainframe platforms, a DDM has an *internal status* and an *external status*.

The internal status controls the use of the DDM *within* the library in which it is contained. It may be one of the following:

PUBLIC	The DDM can be read and updated by all programs within the library.
ACCESS	The DDM can be read, but not updated, by all programs within the library.
PRIVATE	The DDM cannot be used by any program within the library.

The external status controls the use of the DDM *by other libraries* - provided that the library containing the DDM is used as a steplib by other libraries. It may be one of the following:

PUBLIC	The DDM is <i>not</i> protected. It can be used - that is, read and updated - by any library.
ACCESS	The DDM is protected as far as update is concerned. It can be read by any library. It may, however, be updated only by libraries which have been <i>linked</i> to it.
PRIVATE	The DDM is protected. It can be used only by libraries which have been <i>linked</i> to it. This <i>link</i> may be defined as "read" (that is, read only) or "update" (which implies read).

For details, see the section Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX And Windows.

Utilities

With Natural Security, you can control the use of various Natural utilities. This utility protection is function-oriented, which means that you can allow or disallow the functions of a utility individually.

You control the use of a utility by defining *utility profiles* for it. Various types of hierarchically layered utility profiles allow you to define exactly who will be allowed to use which function.

Moreover, for utilities which affect the contents of individual libraries, you can determine for which libraries a utility function is to be allowed and for which not. This, you can also define differently for individual users.

For details, see the section Protecting Natural Utilities.

Other Object Types

Apart from users, libraries, DDMs/files, utilities and applications, there are other types of objects which can be defined under Natural Security. However, these other objects are not essential for protecting your Natural environment with Natural Security. Other object types are:

- **External Objects** - These are objects of various types which are used by Predict and other products (see the section External Objects for details).
- **Mailboxes** - These are information screens which may be used to broadcast messages to Natural users (see the section Mailboxes for details).

Logging On

This section describes the rules that apply when a user logs on to Natural under Natural Security. It covers the following topics:

- Logon Procedure
 - LOGON Command
 - Automatic Logon
 - How to End a Natural Session
-

Logon Procedure

Note:

If a user invokes Natural under Natural Security and the FNAT system file specified in the parameter file/module used is a non-Security system file, Natural cannot be started, and the user will receive an appropriate error message.

The logon procedure is used by Natural Security to ensure that the user who is logging on to Natural is authorized for the library requested.

A logon must be executed successfully before any Natural session can be started.

A logon screen (on mainframe computers and under OpenVMS and UNIX) or logon dialog box (under Windows 98/NT/2000) is provided for the user to enter the information required for the logon.

Logon Screen / Logon Dialog Box

When Natural Security is installed, the Natural Security logon screen will be displayed whenever a user invokes Natural.

Under Windows 98/NT/2000, the logon screen is displayed as a dialog box (for the sake of consistency, however, it will also be referred to as "logon screen").

The logon screen requests the user to enter the following:

Library ID	<p>The ID of the library to be used.</p> <p>To determine which libraries are available, the user may enter his/her user ID in the user ID field and an asterisk (*) in the library ID field: a list of all libraries available to the user will be displayed.</p> <p>The list contains all non-protected libraries and all protected libraries to which the user is linked (either directly, or via a group whose security profile is activated).</p> <p>The list also contains all libraries available to the user's terminal (if the terminal is defined to Natural Security. To view a list of all libraries available to the terminal, the user may enter an asterisk (*) in the library ID field without entering a user ID.)</p> <p>Note: For a logon from the Natural Studio in a client environment via the Natural Development Server to a Map Environment on a mainframe server, the specification of an asterisk (*) as library ID is not possible.</p>
User ID	<p>The ID by which the user is defined to Natural Security.</p> <p>The ID of a group must not be entered; a terminal ID must not be entered either.</p> <p>If no user ID is entered, Natural Security will use the ID of the terminal being used. In this case the terminal has to be defined to Natural Security; otherwise the logon will be rejected.</p>
Password	<p>The password specified in the user's security profile. If no password has been specified in the user's security profile, the password will be identical to the user ID (when a newly defined user logs on for the first time and the password is identical to the user ID, the user must change his/her password by entering a new password in the "New Password" field).</p>
New Password	<p>If a valid password has been entered in the "Password" field and the user wishes/has to change that password, the user enters a new password in this field. This new password will then replace the old password and will from then on be the valid password for the user.</p>

The following rules apply for entering values on the logon screen:

- If a user ID is entered, a password must also be entered.
- If no user ID is entered, no password is required.
- A new password can only be entered if a valid password is entered as well.

Passwords

In a user's security profile, the Natural Security administrator may change the password, and may also set a time interval, after which the user will be forced to change the password. The user will then have to enter a password and a new password to be able to log on (for details on these options, see the section User Maintenance).

If a user has forgotten his or her password, the user will have to contact the Natural Security administrator who may then specify a new password in the user's security profile. This will then be the valid password for the user (which the user may change again in the logon screen).

A password or new password when entered will not be displayed on the screen.

Logon Customization

You can customize the layout of the logon screen / logon dialog box to suit your requirements:

- **For mainframe computers, OpenVMS and UNIX**, the source code of the logon screen, map LOGONM1, is provided in the library SYSSEC. To change the logon screen, you copy the source of LOGONM1 from SYSSEC into one of your own libraries, modify it to suit your requirements, catalog it, and then copy the cataloged object into the library SYSLIB to replace the default logon screen.
- **For Windows 98/NT/2000**, the source code of the logon dialog box, GLOGONM1, is provided in the library SYSSEC. To change the logon dialog box, you copy the source of GLOGONM1 from SYSSEC into one of your own libraries, modify it to suit your requirements, catalog it, and then copy the cataloged object into the library SYSLIB to replace the default logon dialog box.

There are also logon-related user exits available, which may be used to customize the logon procedure (see Logon-Related User Exits in the section User Exits).

Rejected Logon

A logon to a library will be rejected if:

- the user is not defined to Natural Security;
- the user's security profile is currently inactive (due to Activation Dates settings);
- the user is defined as user type MEMBER and has not been assigned to a group;
- the user is defined as user type MEMBER, and the security profile of the group to which he/she is assigned is currently inactive (due to Activation Dates settings);
- the library is not defined to Natural Security;
- the time window restrictions defined in the library's security profile do not permit use of the library at the time of the logon;
- the library is protected and the user not linked to the library;
- the library is protected and the user is linked to it, but the link has been temporarily locked;
- the library is protected, and the group via which the user is linked to the library is currently inactive (due to Activation Dates settings in the group security profile);
- a non-existent startup transaction is specified in the library's security profile;
- the NEXT/MORE line is not allowed nor a startup transaction specified in the library's security profile.

Logon Without Library ID

If no library ID is entered in the logon screen, the default library specified in the user's security profile will be invoked.

If no default library is specified in the user's security profile, the "Privileged Groups" specified in the user's security profile will be checked (in order of entry) for a default library.

If none of the Privileged Groups has a default library either, the user's private library will be invoked (for more information, see the section Private Libraries).

If neither default libraries nor a private library exist, the user must enter a library ID when he or she logs on.

"RESTART" and "FIN" as Library IDs

If "RESTART" is entered as the library ID, the last RESTARTable library to which the user was logged on will be invoked (for details on the "RESTART" option, see Transactions in the section Library Maintenance).

Note:

The ID of the last RESTARTable library to which a user was logged on is shown in the field "Last Library" in the user security profile.

If "FIN" is entered as the library ID, the Natural session will be terminated.

Successful Logon

After a successful logon to a library the following may be invoked:

- the startup transaction specified in the library's security profile (if specified);
- the Natural main menu, if no startup transaction is specified.

LOGON Command

If the first logon to a library at the beginning of a Natural session was successful, a user may change from one library to another by using the Natural system command LOGON.

See also your Natural User's Guide for information on the LOGON system command.

The LOGON command takes the following parameters:

- If no parameter is specified, the default library will be invoked (either the user's or one of the privileged group's); if no default library is specified, the Natural Security logon screen will be invoked.

Example: LOGON

- If one parameter is specified, it will be interpreted as a library ID.

Example: LOGON LIBX

Example: LOGON *

- If two parameters are specified, the first will be interpreted as a user ID, the second as a password.

Example: LOGON USERX PASSWX

- If three parameters are specified, the first will be interpreted as a library ID, the second as a user ID, the third as a password.

Example: LOGON LIBX USERX PASSWX

- If four parameters are specified, the first will be interpreted as a library ID, the second as a user ID, the third as a password, the fourth as a new password.

Example: LOGON LIBX USERX PASSWX NEWPASSX

LOGON Command Errors

If an error is detected during logon processing, Natural Security will display an error message.

If the LOGON command has been invoked from a library, Natural Security will invoke the error transaction defined for the library. If no error transaction is defined, the logon screen will be invoked.

Automatic Logon

Users would normally have to log on twice, first to the operating system and second to Natural. To eliminate the need for a second logon, you may set the Natural profile parameter AUTO to AUTO=ON (which is described in the Natural Reference documentation).

As a result, an internal Natural Security logon procedure will be invoked, which uses the operating-system login name (as contained in the Natural system variable *INIT-USER) as the user ID, but no password (on the assumption that this has been verified by the operating-system logon procedure). The Natural Security logon screen will be suppressed. A logon with a user ID other than the operating-system login name will not be possible.

If AUTO=ON is used, the user has no possibility of specifying a library ID. The library to which the user will be logged on is determined by the same rules as described under Logon Without Library ID above. This means that automatic logon is only possible if a default library is specified (for the user or one of his/her Privileged Groups) or the user has a private library.

If you combine AUTO=ON with specifying a default library in a user's security profile and with specifying a startup transaction for that library, the user will receive the first screen of the default library immediately after invoking Natural without having to pass any intermediate screens (default libraries are described under Components of a User Profile in the section User Maintenance, startup transactions under Transactions in the section Library Maintenance).

If AUTO=ON is set, the system command LOGOFF has the same result as the system command FIN (see How to End a Natural Session below).

If AUTO=ON is set, and after the initial automatic logon the user tries to log on to another library and causes a logon error, the error transaction for the current library will be invoked. If no error transaction is specified, an error message will be issued and then the startup transaction (if specified) for the current library will be invoked.

How to End a Natural Session

The following Natural system commands may be used to end a Natural session under Natural Security:

LOGOFF	This command terminates a Natural session and invokes the logon screen. To leave the logon screen, you enter "FIN" as the library ID. If the profile parameter AUTO=ON is set (see Automatic Logon above), the LOGOFF command has the same effect as the FIN command.
LOGON (without parameters)	This command terminates a Natural session and starts the logon procedure, invoking either a default library or the logon screen (if no default library is defined). See also Automatic Logon above.
FIN	This command terminates a Natural session and is used to leave Natural altogether.



Natural Security cannot protect your Natural environment against unauthorized use if Natural users leave their terminals unattended whilst being logged on to Natural. Therefore, users should be reminded to use the LOGOFF command before they leave their terminal. Unauthorized people will then be confronted with the Natural Security logon screen and may only use what has been defined for them to use under Natural Security.

Note:

In library security profiles, you may also specify a non-activity time limit, after which an automatic logoff will be executed.

Finding Your Way In Natural Security

This section provides information on handling Natural Security. It covers the following topics:

- Pressing the ENTER Key
 - Help
 - Not Sure What to Enter?
 - Handling a List
 - Direct Commands
-

Pressing the ENTER Key

To tell Natural Security to perform a particular action, you enter the appropriate function code, command, etc. and then press the ENTER key.

So, if this documentation tells you to "enter a function code", this means, "type in the function code and press ENTER".

If a function requires that you press another key, this is explicitly mentioned in this documentation.

Help

To invoke online help for a Natural Security function:

- you enter a question mark (?) as a function code on screens with a function code input field;
- you press PF1 on any Natural Security screen.

An explanation of a given screen and the information necessary to proceed will be displayed.

Note:

If certain items displayed on a Natural Security screen are not directly relevant for the execution of the function concerned, these items are not always explained in this documentation. In these cases, you will find the corresponding explanations in the online help.

Not Sure What to Enter?

If you are not sure what you can enter in a certain input field on a Natural Security menu or selection screen, enter an asterisk (*) in the field: a window will be displayed showing you all the possible values for the field; in the window, you can then select the desired value.

Handling a List

Selecting the Range of Objects to be Listed

When you invoke the Maintenance or Retrieval subsystem for a certain object type (user, library, etc.), a list of these objects will be displayed. Normally such a list will contain all objects.

For example, to list all users defined to Natural Security, you mark object type "User".

```

+-----MAINTENANCE-----+
! Please select one type of object: !
!                                     !
!  X User                             !
!  _ Application                       !
!  _ Library                          !
!  _ File                             !
!  _ Mailbox                          !
!  _ Utility                          !
!                                     !
!                                     !
! Start Value .. _____          !
! Type/Status .. _____          !
+-----+

```

The contents of the above selection window may vary depending on the platform and the types of external objects available. If the list of object types exceeds the size of the window, you can use PF7 and PF8 to scroll within the window.

If you do not want a list of all objects but would like only certain objects to be listed, you may use the option "Start Value".

For users, applications, libraries and files, you may also use the option "Type/Status" - either alone or in combination with the "Start Value" option. For other objects, only the "Start Value" option is available.

Start Value

In this field you may enter a start value, which may consist of one or more characters, or of one or more characters followed by an asterisk. The option to enter a value followed by an asterisk (*) is referred to as "asterisk notation" throughout the Natural Security documentation.

Example of Start Value:

To list all users, starting from the first user whose ID begins with "TOM", you mark object type "User" and enter the following:

```
Start Value .. TOM
```

Example of Start Value with Asterisk Notation:

To list only those users whose IDs begin with "TOM", you mark object type "User" and enter the following:

```
Start Value .. TOM*
```

Type/Status

In this field you may enter a user type, application type, library protection status, or (on mainframes) a file status.

User Type

User type may be one of the following:

G	Group
M	Member
P	Person
A	Administrator
T	Terminal
B	Batch User

Library Protection Status

Library protection status may be one of the following:

NN	Neither people-protected nor terminal-protected.
YN	People-protected only
NY	Terminal-protected only.
YY	People- or terminal-protected.
YA	People- and terminal-protected.

(The above protection combinations are explained in the section Protecting Libraries.)

File Status

File status may be one of the following:

PRIV	Private.
ACCE	Access.
PUBL	Public.
UNDF	Undefined; that is, DDMs for which no file security profiles have been created (*).
DEFI	Defined; that is, all PRIV, ACCE, and PUBL files (*).
NDDM	File security profiles for which no DDMs exist (*).
DDM	All PRIV, ACCE, PUBL and UNDF files (*)

* This is not an actual file status, but for selection purposes only.

If you do not select a file status, all PRIV, ACCE, and PUBL files will be listed.

Application Type

Application type may be one of the following:

B or BASE	Base applications.
C or COMP	Compound applications.

If you do not select an application type, both base and compound applications will be listed.

Example of Type/Status option:

To list all users of user type "Member", you mark object type "User" and enter the following:

```
Type/Status .. M
```

Example of combining Start Value and Type/Status:

To list only users of user type "Member" whose IDs begin with "T", you mark object type "User" and enter the following:

```
Start Value .. T*  
Type/Status .. M
```

Scrolling a List

Once a list of objects is displayed, you may scroll it backwards and forwards in the following manner:

- To scroll a list one page forward, you press PF8 (+).
- To scroll a list one page backward, you press PF7 (-).
- To scroll a list to its beginning, you press PF19 (- -).
- To scroll a list to a specified start value, you may use the **intensified** field above the IDs, in the same way as described above for the "Start Value" field. The field also displays the currently valid start value.
- For a list of users or applications, you can also use the **intensified** field above the Type column in the same way as described above for the "Type/Status" field.
For a list of libraries, the same is true for the field above the Protection Status column. These fields also display the currently valid type/status selection criterion.

11:38:39	*** NATURAL SECURITY ***		2001-08-01
	- User Maintenance -		
Co	User ID	User Name	Type Message
___	AAZ	ABDUL ALHAZRED	A
___	AD	ARTHUR DENT	A
___	AH	ALICE HARGREAVES	M
___	DI	DAVID INNES	M
___	ER	ELLEN RIPLEY	M
___	HB	HOLLIS BROWN	A
___	VV	VINCENT VEGA	P

Selecting an Object from a List

To select an object from a list for a function, you simply type in the appropriate function code for the function next to the object in the left-hand column (entitled "Co") of a selection screen.

If you do not remember the function code for the function you wish to perform, enter an asterisk (*) in the "Co" column. A window will be displayed which shows all the function codes available; in the window, you can then select the desired function code.

Direct Commands

Once you are familiar with Natural Security and know how to find your way from menu to menu, you may also be interested in invoking the screen you want directly. This is done by using *direct commands*.

You may enter a direct command on any Natural Security screen which provides a *command line*:

```

Command ==>
Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help           Exit                               Canc

```

Generally, a direct command consists of the following components, which you specify in the following order:

function object-type object-ID parameters

- First, you specify a *function* (for example, MODIFY, DISPLAY).
- After the function, you specify an *object-type* (for example, USER, LIBRARY).
- After the object type, you can then specify an *object-ID* (for example, a user ID or library ID). For the specification of an ID, you may use asterisk notation (as described under Start Value above).
- After the ID, you can specify one or more *parameters* (for example, a user type).

If you enter a direct command which is invalid, you will receive an appropriate error message. If you enter a command which is incomplete, you will be prompted to specify the missing item(s).

After a function invoked by a direct command has been executed, the screen from which that function would "normally" be invoked will be displayed, *not* the screen on which the command had been entered.

Available Commands

To get a list of all commands available, you enter an asterisk (*) in the command line.

Abbreviating a Command

You may abbreviate the *function* component of a direct command as you please, as long as the abbreviation uniquely identifies the function.

You may abbreviate the *object-type* component of a direct command to 2 characters.

Examples:

DISPLAY USER AD	This command causes the security profile of user "AD" to be displayed.
DISPLAY US AD DIS USER AD DI US AD	Each of these three commands also causes the security profile of user "AD" to be displayed.
DE US AD	This command invokes the Delete function for user "AD".
D US AD	This command is invalid, because "D" does not uniquely identify a function; it could stand for Display or Delete.

Several Natural system commands are available within Natural Security; they must also be taken into consideration as far as the unique identification of a function is concerned.

Command Examples

ADD	If you enter this command on a Maintenance selection list, the Add function for that type of object will be invoked. If you enter it somewhere else, the command is incomplete, because no object type was specified.
ADD US	The Add User window will be invoked for you to enter a user ID and user type.
ADD US JD	The Add User window will be invoked for you to enter a user type.
ADD US JD M DPR1	The Add User screen for user "JD" of user type "Member", using default profile "DPR1" as the basis of the user profile to be created, will be invoked for you to define the user.
MODIFY	This command is incomplete, because no object type was specified after the function.
MODIFY LIB	This command displays the Library Maintenance selection list, as no library ID was specified.
MOD LIB S*	This command displays the Library Maintenance selection list containing all libraries whose IDs begin with "S".
MOD LIB SPAM	The security profile of library "SPAM" will be displayed for modification.
MOD SPAM	This command is <i>invalid</i> , because no object type was specified before the object ID.
CO US IW	The Copy User window will be displayed for you to enter the user ID of the new user.
CO US IW KG	The Copy User screen for user "KG" will be invoked with the security profile of user "IW" copied into the security profile of user "KG". The copying is without links.
CO US IW KG Y	The Copy User screen for user "KG" will be invoked with the security profile of user "IW" copied into the security profile of user "KG". The copying is with links.
EDIT US DOC	This command invokes the Edit Group Members function for the group "DOC".
EDIT LI GHT	This command is <i>invalid</i> , as the The Edit Group Members function only applies to users.
XREF MAIL MAIL1	Invokes the Cross-Reference function for mailbox "MAIL1".
LK LI ODDS US	The Link Users To Library screen will be invoked for users to be linked to library "ODDS"; the list will contain all users.
LINK US IW LI	The Link User To Libraries screen will be invoked for user "IW" to be linked to libraries; the list will contain all libraries.

Special Commands

Apart from commands which invoke a particular function as described above, and several Natural system commands (which are described in the Natural Reference documentation), the following commands are available (underlining indicates the shortest abbreviation possible):

Command	Function
<u>ADMIN</u>	This command displays the Administrator Services Menu.
CUSTOM_n (<i>n</i> =1 to 5)	The commands CUSTOM1, CUSTOM2, CUSTOM3, CUSTOM4 and CUSTOM5 invoke Natural programs of the same names. You can write your own programs of these names to perform whatever functions you require; this allows you to invoke such functions from within Natural Security.
ERRDEL	This command deletes all logon/countersign error entries (see also Deleting All Error Entries - Direct Command ERRDEL in the section Administrator Services).
ERROR	This command displays the Logon/Countersign Error Processing Menu.
LOGDEL	This command deletes all logon records (see also Deleting All Logon Records - Direct Command LOGDEL in the section Administrator Services).
LOGFILE	This command invokes the Log File Maintenance function (which is described in the section Administrator Services).
<u>LOGREC</u>	This command displays the Logon Records Processing Menu.
<u>MAINTENANCE</u> <i>object-type object-ID parameters</i>	<p>If you specify only the command itself, the object selection window for maintenance functions will be displayed.</p> <p>If you specify an <i>object-type</i> after the command, the Maintenance selection list for that type of object will be displayed.</p> <p>If you specify an <i>object-type</i> and an <i>object-ID</i> after the command, the Maintenance selection list for that type of object will be displayed, and the <i>object-ID</i> will be used as start value for the list.</p> <p>After the <i>object-ID</i>, you can specify one or more <i>parameters</i> (for example, user type) as further selection criteria for the Maintenance selection list to be displayed.</p>
MENU	Displays the Natural Security Main Menu.
<u>RETRIEVAL</u> <i>object-type object-ID parameters</i>	<p>If you specify only the command itself, the object selection window for retrieval functions will be displayed.</p> <p>In the same manner as for the MAINTENANCE command (see above), you can specify an <i>object-type</i>, <i>object-ID</i> and <i>parameters</i> with this command.</p>
. (period)	Terminates the given processing level and displays the screen of the next higher processing level (the same as PF3).

Administrator Services

This section covers the following topics:

- Access to Administrator Services
- Set General Options
- Set Library and User Defaults
- Default User Profiles
- Set PF-Keys
- Logon/Countersign Error Processing
- Logon Records Processing
- Definition of System Libraries
- Processing of Maintenance Log Records
- Definition of System File Access

The Administrator Services subsystem provides several functions which apply to the Natural Security system as a whole and to all security profiles.

You select "Administrator Services" on the Main Menu. If you have access to the subsystem (see Access to Administrator Services below), the Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

The Administrator Services Menu consists of two screens. With PF7 and PF8, you can switch between the two screens. They provide the following functions:

Administrator Services Menu 1:

- Set General Options (*)
- Set Library and User Defaults (*)
- Default User Profiles (*)
- Set PF-Keys (*)
- Logon/Countersign Error Processing
- Logon Records Processing
- Interface Subprograms
- Definition of System Libraries

Administrator Services Menu 2:

- Processing of Maintenance Log Records
- Definition of Utility Defaults/Templates
- Definition of System File Access

You should study the functions marked above with (*) before you start defining objects to Natural Security. The other Administrator Services functions are not directly related to defining objects to Natural Security.

Access to Administrator Services

As far as access to the Administrator Services subsystem is concerned, the following applies:

- If owners are specified in the security profile of the Natural Security library SYSSEC, only these owners have access to the Administrator Services subsystem.
- If SYSSEC has no owners assigned, every ADMINISTRATOR may access the Administrator Services subsystem.

For information on owners in library security profiles, see the sections Library Maintenance and Countersignatures.

Set General Options

Before you start defining objects to Natural Security, it is advisable to specify a number of options which will apply to the Natural Security system as a whole.

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu, you select "Set general options". The Set General Options screen will be displayed, which provides the following options:

- Transition Period Logon
- Activate Security for Development Server File
- Maximum Number of Logon Attempts
- Suppress Display of Logon Messages
- Lock User Option
- User Password History
- Free Access to Functions via Interface Subprograms
- Minimum Number of Co-Owners
- Deletion of Non-Empty Libraries Allowed
- Overwriting of Defaults Possible
- Display DBID/FNR of FSEC
- Exit Functions with Confirmation
- Logging of Maintenance Functions

The individual options are described below.

Transition Period Logon

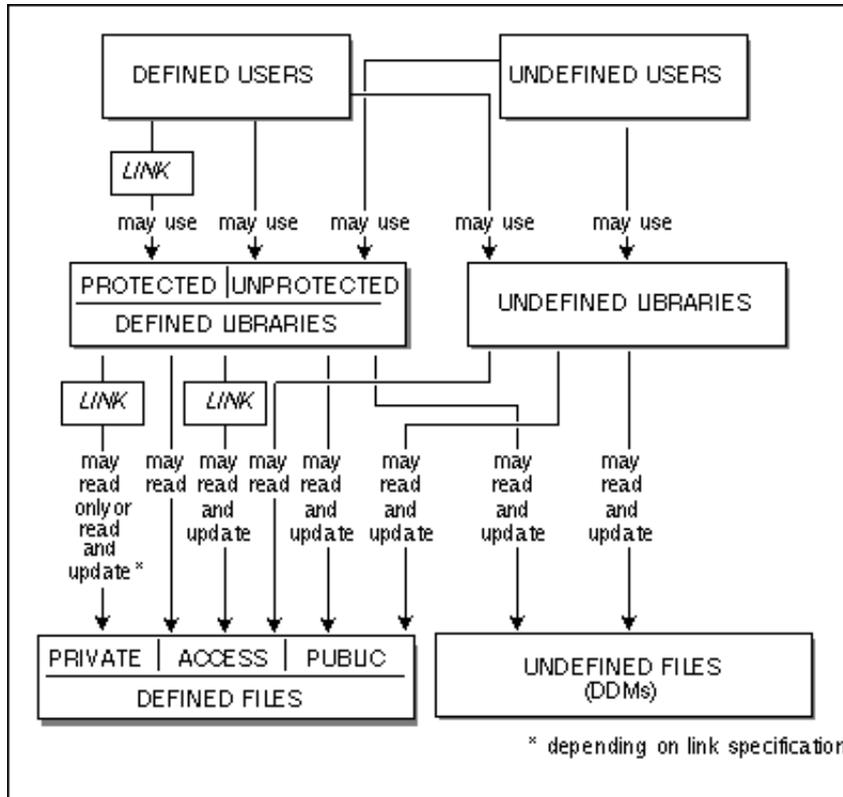
This option allows a smooth transition from an unprotected Natural environment to one protected by Natural Security.

Y	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Users not yet defined to Natural Security may log on to libraries which are not yet defined to Natural Security or which are defined as unprotected. ● Libraries not yet defined to Natural Security may be accessed by any (defined or undefined) user. ● Undefined libraries may access DDMs which are not yet defined to Natural Security as well as files of status PUBLIC and ACCESS. ● Undefined DDMs may be accessed by any (defined or undefined) library.
N	Only users defined to Natural Security may use Natural. Any library not defined to Natural Security cannot be used.

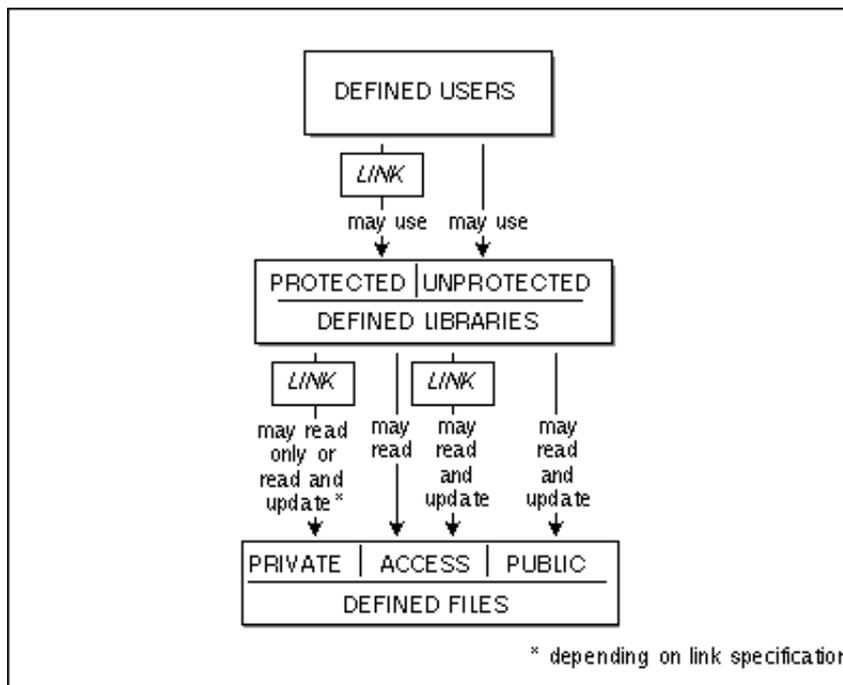
The effects of the Transition Period Logon settings are illustrated below.

If you have had an unprotected Natural installation and Natural Security is now being installed, it is advisable to set the Transition Period Logon to "Y" so as to ensure that work with Natural may continue while users and libraries are defined to Natural Security. Once all objects and links are defined, the Transition Period Logon should be set to "N".

Conditions of use under Transition Period Logon = Y:



Conditions of use under Transition Period Logon = N:



Activate Security for Development Server File

This option only appears if the Natural Development Server is installed and the current Natural session uses a development server file. It is only relevant if you wish to control the access to base and compound applications on the development server file. For details, see the section Protecting Natural Development Server Applications.

Y	<p>Security for the development server file is active: The application security profiles for base and compound application defined in Natural Security take effect and control the access to the Natural Development Server objects "base applications" and "compound applications" on the development server file.</p> <p>The FSEC system file which is being used when this option is set to "Y" will be defined to the development server file. This development server file can then only be used in a Natural Security environment. All security checks made by the Natural Development Server in the Natural Studio's application workspace will be performed using the security definitions on that FSEC system file.</p> <p>If you set this option to "Y", this will also activate Predict Security (if not already activated in Predict, by setting the Predict parameter "Protect Predict File" on the General Defaults > Protection screen to "Y"). Please note that the activation of Predict Security will not only affect the access to base and compound applications, but may also cause other Predict Security settings not related to applications to take effect.</p> <p>The database ID and file number of the development server file for which the option is activated will be shown on the Set General Options screen.</p>
N	<p>Security for the development server file is not active. Application security profiles are not evaluated.</p>

Maximum Number of Logon Attempts

1-5	<p>You may specify how many attempts to log on users shall have. After <i>n</i> unsuccessful logon attempts, the logon procedure will be terminated, the user "thrown out", and a logon-error record written (for information on logon-error records, see Logon Errors below).</p>
------------	--

Suppress Display of Logon Messages

This option may be used to suppress the display of the messages NAT0853 and NAT0854, which indicate that a logon to a library has been successful. By default, one of these messages is displayed after every successful logon to a library.

Y	<p>Messages NAT0853 and NAT0854 will not be displayed.</p>
N	<p>Messages NAT0853 and NAT0854 will be displayed.</p>

Lock User Option

This option may be used to prevent users from trying to misuse other users' user IDs and passwords. This applies to the logon procedure (see Logon Procedure in the section Logging On) and to the countersignatures feature (see the section Countersignatures).

Y	<p>For logon attempts, the following applies: Once a user has reached the maximum number of logon attempts without entering the correct password, the respective user will be locked, i.e. the user ID be made invalid. Not only will all Natural Security user IDs that were tried out be locked, but also the user's operating-system login name (as identified by the Natural system variable *INIT-USER), if that is used as a user ID for a Natural Security user profile.</p> <p>For countersign attempts, the following applies: After too many invalid passwords (the maximum number of logon attempts also applies here) on a Countersign screen, the user who invoked the respective function (as identified by his/her Natural Security user ID) will be locked.</p>
F	The same as "Y"; in addition, the Natural session is terminated when the user is locked.
N	The Lock User feature is not active.

User Password History

This option may be used to exercise more control over the users' usage of passwords to enforce more efficient password protection.

Y	<p>Password history is active. This has the following effects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The last <i>nnn</i> passwords used by each user are recorded by Natural Security. These last <i>nnn</i> passwords cannot be used again by the user as new password. You set the number of passwords to be recorded in the window displayed when you activate this option. ● A user is forced to change his/her password at logon when the password has been changed by an administrator in the user's security profile. ● You can define certain rules to which passwords must conform. You define these password rules by using the function "Set Library and User Defaults" (see below).
N	<p>Password history is not active.</p>

Other password-related Natural Security features are:

- the minimum password length, which can be set on the "Set Library and User Defaults" screen (see below),
- and the password expiration (field "Change after *nnn* days"), which can be set in user security profiles (see the section User Maintenance).

Free Access to Functions via Interface Subprograms

You may specify who may access Natural Security maintenance and retrieval functions from outside Natural Security via the interface subprograms provided. For details on these subprograms, see the section Interface Subprograms.

Y	<p>Maintenance and retrieval functions may be accessed from outside Natural Security via the interface subprograms by anybody who may use the subprograms.</p> <p>If you set this option to "Y", you can protect each maintenance/retrieval function separately using functional security (see the section Functional Security).</p>
R	<p>Retrieval functions (but not maintenance functions) may be accessed from outside Natural Security via the interface subprograms by anybody who may use the subprograms.</p> <p>If you set this option to "R", you can protect each retrieval function separately using functional security (see the section Functional Security).</p>
N	<p>Maintenance and retrieval functions may be accessed from outside Natural Security only by users (of type ADMINISTRATOR) who may also use the Natural Security library SYSSEC. With the subprograms, they may only perform those functions they are also allowed to perform within SYSSEC, and only under the same conditions under which they may perform them in SYSSEC.</p>

Maintenance functions are all functions of the subprograms NSCFI, NSCLI, NSCOB and NSCUS - except their Display functions.

Retrieval functions are all functions of the subprograms NSCCHCK, NSCDEF, NSCDU, and NSCXR and of the subprograms whose names begin with "NSCDA", as well as the Display functions of the subprograms NSCFI, NSCLI, NSCOB and NSCUS.

Minimum Number of Co-Owners

0-3	<p>You may specify the minimum number of co-owners for each owner of a security profile.</p> <p>The number set here will be valid for all security profiles and cannot be modified individually.</p>
------------	--

For an explanation of co-owners, see the section Countersignatures; leave the value set to "0" until you have read that section.

Deletion of Non-Empty Libraries Allowed

You may specify whether a library's (or private library's) security profile can be deleted if the library contains any source or object modules.

Y	A library's security profile can be deleted even if the library contains any source or object modules. When you try to delete a library profile, Natural Security will issue a warning if the library is not empty. This option only affects the deletion of a library's <i>security profile</i> ; the Natural library itself and the modules it contains are not deleted.
N	A library's security profile cannot be deleted as long as the library itself still contains any source or object modules.

Overwriting of Defaults Possible

You may specify whether the defaults set on the Set Library And User Defaults screen may be overwritten in individual security profiles.

Y	The default settings specified on the Set Library And User Defaults screen may be overwritten in the individual security profiles.
N	The default settings specified on the Set Library And User Defaults screen may not be overwritten in any security profile. They will be valid for all libraries/users without exception.

Library and user defaults are described under Set Library and User Defaults below.

Display DBID/FNR of FSEC

You may specify whether the database ID and file number of the current Natural Security system file (FSEC) are to be displayed on the menu and selection screens within the library SYSSEC.

Y	The database ID and file number of the current Natural Security system file (FSEC) will be displayed on the menu and selection screens within the library SYSSEC. They will be displayed in the top right-hand corner below the current date.
N	The database ID and file number of the FSEC file will not be displayed in SYSSEC.

Exit Functions with Confirmation

You may specify how you wish Natural Security to react when you leave a function by pressing PF2, PF3, PF12 or PF15.

Y	Each time you leave a function in Natural Security by pressing PF2, PF3, PF12 or PF15, a window will be displayed in which you have to specify whether the modifications you made before pressing the key are to be saved or not or whether you wish to return to the function.
N	When you leave a function by pressing PF2, PF3 or PF15, the modifications you made before pressing the key will be saved. When you leave a function by pressing PF12, the modifications you made before pressing the key will <i>not</i> be saved.

For details on which function is assigned to which key, see the section Set PF-Keys below.

Logging of Maintenance Functions

This option allows you to ascertain who has modified which security profiles and administrator services settings.

Y	Log records are written for modifications to security profiles and administrator services settings.
N	Modifications are not logged.

When you set this option to "Y", a window will be displayed in which you can specify the following:

<p>Log file DBID/FNR</p>	<p>The database ID and file number of the file in which the log records are to be stored. This file must have been loaded during the installation process of Natural Security.</p> <p>Note: Once "Logging of Maintenance Functions" has been activated, you cannot change the log file assignment. You have to deactivate the option, before you can assign another database ID or file number.</p>
<p>Logging even if no actual modification</p>	<p>Y - Modifications are also logged if nothing has actually been changed; that is, if a security profile or administrator services setting has been invoked for modification, but no actual change has been made to the profile/setting.</p> <p>N - Modifications are only logged if a profile/setting has actually been changed.</p>
<p>Logging of changes to</p>	<p>You mark with "Y" the object types whose modifications are to be logged:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● administrator services settings, ● user security profiles, ● library security profiles, ● file security profiles, ● application security profiles, ● mailbox security profiles, ● various types of external object security profiles. <p>"Administrator services settings" in this context means all functions listed on the Administrator Services Menu (except "Interface Subprograms").</p> <p>Note: Modifications to utility security profiles are not logged separately. Instead, default profiles and templates are handled under administrator services settings, library-specific utility profiles under library security profiles, and user-specific and user-library specific utility profiles under user security profiles.</p>

To change the above specifications once you have activated the writing of log records, you press PF4 on the Set General Options screen.

To view the log records, you use the function "Processing of Maintenance Log Records" (see below).

Set Library and User Defaults

Before you start defining users and libraries to Natural Security, it is advisable to specify a number of default settings. These default settings will then apply to all library security profiles or user security profiles respectively.

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu, you select "Set library and user defaults". The Set Library And User Defaults screen will be displayed, which provides the following options:

Library Defaults:

- Active cross-reference for Predict
- Logon recorded
- Natural programming mode
- Restart
- Maintenance with Natural utilities
- Clear source area by logon
- Execute startup transaction in batch
- Steplibs

User Defaults:

- ETID
- Minimum password length
- Private library for administrator/person

The above library and user default items also appear on the security profile screens of libraries and users respectively, where you may specify them for each user/library individually. The values you specify for these items on the Set Library And User Defaults screen will appear as defaults on the security profile screen of each object (if applicable). If the general option "Overwriting of defaults possible" (see above) is set to "Y", you may overwrite the defaults in the individual security profiles.

Library Defaults

Active Cross-Reference for Predict

You may specify whether an active cross-reference in Predict (if installed) will be generated for a library.

Y	An active cross-reference in Predict will be generated.
N	An active cross-reference in Predict will not be generated.
F	An active cross-reference in Predict will be forced.
D	Objects to be cataloged must be documented in Predict (however, no active cross-reference will be generated).

See the Predict documentation for details on active cross-references.

Logon Recorded

Y	Every time a user logs on to a library, a logon record will be written by Natural Security. You may review the activities of users by viewing these records with the "Logon Records Processing" function. For details on logon records, see Logon Records Processing below.
N	Logons to libraries will not be recorded.

Note:

If the general option "Transition Period Logon" (see above) is set to "Y" , a logon record will also be written every time an undefined user logs on, and every time a user logs on to an undefined library.

Natural Programming Mode

R	Reporting mode.
S	Structured mode.

Restart

You may specify whether during the logon procedure an Adabas OPEN command with or without End of Transaction ID (ETID) is to be executed.

Y	During the logon procedure an OPEN command with ETID will be executed.
N	During the logon procedure an OPEN command without ETID will be executed.

Maintenance with Natural Utilities

This setting only applies the old Version 2 utility protection mechanism described in the section System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism. As explained in the section Protecting Natural Utilities, *it is strongly recommended that this old mechanism no longer be used.*

N	The contents of a library are <i>not protected</i> against being maintained with Natural utilities.
O	The contents of a library may be maintained with Natural utilities only by <i>owners</i> of the library's security profile.
P	The contents of a library may be maintained with Natural utilities under <i>protection rules</i> , that is, only by users who may log on to the library under Natural Security.

This applies the Natural utilities NATLOAD, NATUNLD, SYSERR and SYSMAIN, and to the Natural system command SCAN. For details see the section System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism.

Clear Source Area by Logon

Y	The editor's source work area will be cleared automatically when a user logs on from the library to another.
N	The editor's source work area remains as it is when a user logs on from the library to another.

Execute Startup Transaction in Batch

Y	The startup transaction specified in a library security profile will also be executed (once) in batch mode.
S	The startup transaction specified in a library security profile will also be executed in batch mode; in addition, its name will be placed in the Natural system variable *STARTUP.
N	If the NEXT/MORE line is allowed for a library, the startup transaction specified in the library security profile will not be executed in batch mode. If the NEXT/MORE line is not allowed, the startup transaction will also be executed (once) in batch mode.

See also the section Natural Security In Batch Mode.

Steplibs

You may enter the names of the libraries which are to be the steplib libraries (concatenated libraries) for a library. If a library does not contain a requested programming object, the steplibs will be searched for the object one after another in the order in which they are specified.

You can specify the name of the first steplib in the Steplibs field on the Set Library And User Defaults screen. To specify more than one steplib, enter an asterisk (*) in the field or press PF4: a window will be displayed, in which you can specify up to 9 default steplibs.

User Defaults

ETID

You may specify which values are to be used as IDs for End of Transaction data (ETIDs).

G	ETIDs will be generated by Natural Security.
U	The ID by which a user is defined to Natural Security, i.e. the value of the Natural system variable *USER, will be used as ETID. If the Automatic Logon feature (which is described in the section Logging On) is used, the value of *USER will be identical to that of *INIT-USER.
I	The value of the Natural system variable *INIT-USER will be used as ETID.
T	The value of the Natural system variable *INIT-ID will be used as ETID.
N	ETIDs will not be used.

If you do not remember the possible values you may specify, enter a question mark (?) or an asterisk (*) in the field: a window will be displayed; in the window, mark the desired value with a character or with the cursor; the value will then be written into the ETID field.

See the Natural Reference documentation for details on the above-mentioned system variables.

Minimum Password Length

1-8	A user password must not consist of fewer characters than the number specified here. When you set this length, please bear in mind that by default passwords are identical to user IDs (see the section User Maintenance).
------------	---

Private Library for Administrator/Person

You may specify whether users of type PERSON or ADMINISTRATOR may have a personal ("private") library.

Y	PERSONs and ADMINISTRATORs may have a private library.
N	PERSONs and ADMINISTRATORs may not have a private library.

For information on private libraries, see the section Private Libraries.

Password Rules

This option can only be used if the general option "User Password History" (see above) is active.

It allows you to define rules to which user passwords must conform. When you press PF5 on the "Set Library and User Defaults" screen, a window is displayed in which you can define the following:

Password mask	<p>You can define a "mask" to which passwords must conform; that is, you can define for each position in a password whether it has to be an alphabetical character (A) or a number (N) or whether it can be either (*).</p> <p>For example, "***AAA" means that the first three characters can be either numbers or letters, while the second three have to be letters.</p> <p>The length of the mask must correspond to the user default "Minimum Password Length" (see above).</p>
Each character only once	<p>If this value is set to "Y", passwords must not contain a character twice.</p> <p>For example, "THIRST" would not be allowed, because it contains two T's.</p>
Disallow double characters	<p>If this value is set to "Y", passwords must not contain double characters.</p> <p>For example, "LITTLE" would not be allowed, because of the double T.</p>
Check password for pattern	<p>If this value is set to "Y", a password must not be the same as the current value of the Natural system variable *USER. Moreover, a new password must not be too similar to the old one: a new password will be rejected if its last three characters are identical to those of the old password.</p>

In addition, the window displays the maximum number of stored passwords, that is, the number of passwords recorded by Natural Security for each user which cannot be used again by the user as new password.

Default User Profiles

Before you use default user security profiles, you should be familiar with the "normal" way of defining users as explained in the section User Maintenance.

When you add new users, you can either type in every item of every user security profile by hand, or you can use a pre-defined default user profile for the creation of a user security profile. When you have to define numerous users whose security profiles are to be very similar to one another, you can define in a default profile the items which are to be the same for many users, and then use this default profile as the basis for the individual security profiles. By using default user profiles, you can thus reduce the amount of work required to define users to Natural Security.

You create a default profile as described below, and then use it as the basis for a user security profile as described in the section User Maintenance.

How to Create a Default Profile

On the Main Menu, enter code "A" for "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu, enter code "U" for "Default user profiles". The Default User Profiles selection list will be displayed.

In the command line of this screen, enter the command "ADD". The Add Default User Profile window will be displayed.

In this window, enter the following:

- the *user ID* of the default profile,
- the *user type* of the default profile.

For information on user IDs and user types, see the section User Maintenance.

The Add Default User Profile screen will be displayed. On this screen you may define a default user profile.

The Add Default User Profile screen corresponds more or less to the Add User screen for the same user type. The individual items you may define as part of a user profile are described under Components of a User Profile in the section User Maintenance. Please note, however, that you can define some items only in an individual security profile, but not in a default profile.

Default profiles are maintained like individual user profiles (as described in the section User Maintenance).

How to Use a Default Profile

When you add a new user, you can specify the ID of a default profile which is to be used as the basis of the user security profile you are creating.

The *user type* of the default profile must be the same as that of the security profile you use it for.

When you use a default profile to add a new user, the following items are copied from the default profile into the user profile:

- the default library,
- the password change interval,
- the language indicator,
- the time differential,
- the activation dates,
- the batch user ID,
- the mailboxes,
- the security notes,
- the "Logon recorded" setting,
- the session options.

When you use a default profile to add a new user, the user ID, the user name and the owners are *not* copied from the default profile into the user profile.

On the Add User screen, you can then overwrite the items copied into the user profile and specify further items.

Note:

To define numerous users who are to have identical security profiles, you can also use the "Multiple Add User" function (which is described in the section User Maintenance).

Set PF-Keys

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu, you select "Set PF-keys". The Set PF-Keys screen will be displayed.

On this screen, you may assign functions and names to keys, as described below.

Functions may be assigned to certain keys only. Names may be assigned to all keys.

PF-Key Functions

The functions assigned to the following PF-keys cannot be modified:

Key	Function	Explanation
PF01	Help	For each Natural Security screen there is a Help Info which provides an explanation of the screen and tells you how to proceed. If you press PF1 on any Natural Security screen, the appropriate Help Info will be displayed.
PF02	Previous Menu	This key returns you to the menu screen from which you have invoked the current processing level. By default, the modifications you made before leaving a function with PF2 will be saved; see also the general option "Exit Functions with Confirmation" above.
PF03	Exit	This key causes a given processing level to be terminated and the screen of the next higher processing level to be displayed. By default, the modifications you made before leaving a function with PF3 will be saved; see also the general option "Exit Functions with Confirmation" above.
PF04	Additional Options	When you are on a security profile screen, you can press this key (instead of marking the Additional Options field on the screen with "Y") to display the Additional Options selection window for a security profile.
PF05		Various, different functions on different screens (as described where appropriate).
PF06	Flip	The PF-key lines at the bottom of the Natural Security display either PF-keys 1 to 12 or PF-keys 13 to 24. By pressing PF6, you can switch from one display to the other.
PF07	Previous Page (-)	This key scrolls a displayed list one page backward.
PF08	Next Page (+)	This key scrolls a displayed list one page forward.
PF12	Cancel	This key causes a given processing level to be terminated and the screen of the next higher processing level to be displayed. By default, the modifications you made before leaving a function with PF12 will <i>not</i> be saved; see also the general option "Exit Functions with Confirmation" above.
PF13	Refresh	This key undoes all modifications you have made on a screen but which have not yet been saved. The fields on the screen will be reset to the values they had before you changed them.
PF14		(reserved for future use)
PF15	Menu	This key invokes the Natural Security Main Menu. By default, the modifications you made before leaving a function with PF15 will be saved; see also the option "Exit Functions with Confirmation" above.
PF16 to PF18		(reserved for future use)
PF19	First Page (- -)	This key scrolls a displayed list to its beginning.
PF20 to PF24		(reserved for future use)

Note:

CLR has the same function as PF12.

PF09, PF10, PF11, PA1, PA2

You may assign a function to each of these keys yourself. The function assigned will then be invoked within Natural Security by pressing the appropriate PF-key (or PA-key).

One of the following functions may be assigned to a PF-key (or PA-key):

- a Natural system command,
- a Natural terminal command,
- a Natural program.

For information on the available system commands, see your Natural User's Guide; for information on the available terminal commands, see the Natural Reference documentation.

To assign a function to a key, you enter a command or program name in the "Function" column of the Set PF-Keys screen next to a key number.

PF-Key Names

You may name all PF-keys (including those whose function assignments you cannot change). The names may be up to 5 characters long and can be entered in the "Name" column of the Set PF-Keys screen.

The assigned names will appear in the PF-key lines which are displayed at the bottom of each Natural Security screen:

```
Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp          Flip  -      +                               Canc
```

If no name is displayed for a PF-key, this indicates that the function assigned to this key is not applicable to the screen displayed.

The lines display either PF-keys 1 to 12 or PF-keys 13 to 24. By pressing PF6, you can switch from one display to the other.

Logon/Countersign Error Processing

The Logon/Countersign Error Processing functions serve two purposes:

- The Logon Error Processing functions are used to view unsuccessful attempts to log on to Natural.
- The List/Unlock Locked Users function, which is only used in conjunction with the "Lock User Option", is used to view (and unlock) users who have been "locked" due to logon or countersign errors.

Logon Errors

Note:

Logon Error Processing is independent from and has nothing to do with the Logon Records Processing function (which is described below); do not confuse one with the other.

On the Set General Options screen, you can specify the "Maximum number of logon attempts" (see above) by entering a number n in the range from 1 to 5 (the default is 5). Every time a user makes n consecutive unsuccessful logon attempts, the user will be "thrown out" and a *logon error record* will be written by Natural Security. The logon error record contains detailed information on each of the n logon attempts that led to the record being written (for example, which user and library IDs were entered by the user). The records may be viewed by using the Logon Error Processing functions.

Being able to view logon error records serves the following purposes:

- You can ascertain whether unauthorized people have tried to gain access to Natural.
- You can ascertain what users do wrong when they try to log on. Users may then be informed how to log on correctly.
- You can ascertain whether users have been given the appropriate access rights. A user may, for example, try to log on to an library he/she is not (but should be) allowed to use. In this case you may then make the necessary Natural Security maintenance adjustments to the security profiles and relationships concerned.

The recording by Natural Security of logon errors cannot be "switched off".

Locked Users

If the "Lock User Option" (see Set General Options above) is active, users may be "locked" due to logon or countersign errors:

- **Logon errors:** Once a user has reached the maximum number of logon attempts without entering the correct password, the user will be locked.
- **Countersign errors:** After entering too many invalid passwords on the Countersignature screen, the user who invoked the function requiring the countersignatures will be locked. (For information on countersignatures, see the section Countersignatures.)

With the function "List/Unlock Locked Users" you may see which users have been "locked" due to logon or countersign errors. You may also unlock them again.

If the "Lock User Option" is not active, countersign errors are not recorded, whereas logon errors are always recorded (as explained above) regardless of the "Lock User Option".

How to Invoke Logon/Countersign Error Processing

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu, you select "Logon/countersign error processing". The Logon/Countersign Error Processing Menu will be displayed, which provides the following functions:

- List error entries
- Delete error entries
- Display individual error entries
- List/unlock locked users

The individual functions are described below.

When you select one of these functions, you can also specify the following options on the Logon/Countersign Error Processing Menu:

Order of Records *	<p>T - The logon error records will be in order of terminal IDs, as defined by the Natural system variable *INIT-ID.</p> <p>P - The logon error records will be in order of user IDs, as defined by the Natural system variable *INIT-USER.</p>
Start Value	<p>If you do not wish to get all, but only a certain range of logon error records or locked users respectively, you may specify a start value as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.</p>

* This option has no impact on the List/Unlock Locked Users function.

List Error Entries

This function displays a list of logon error records.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

To select one error entry from the list to have a closer look at it, you type in the corresponding sequential number (first column of the list) in the "Enter no. to be processed" field. A screen displaying the "Error History" of the selected error will be invoked (this display is the same as for the Display Individual Error Entries function).

Delete Error Entries

This function displays a list of logon error records, similar to that displayed by the List Error Entries function (see above).

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

- If you wish to delete all error entries displayed, press ENTER.
 - If you do not wish to delete all error entries displayed, press PF3 to return to the Logon/Countersign Error Processing Menu.
- If you wish to delete individual error entries, use the Display Individual Error Entries function.

It is recommended that logon error records be deleted periodically so as to save space on the FSEC system file.

See also the direct command ERRDEL below.

Display Individual Error Entries

This function displays the "Error History" of logon error entries one by one.

List/Unlock Locked Users

This function is only applicable if the "Lock User Option" (which is described under Set General Options above) is active. It will display a list of those users whose security profiles have been "locked" due to logon or countersign errors. The list will be in alphabetical order of user IDs. On the list you may then unlock individual users.

When you invoke the List/Unlock Locked Users function, the List Locked Users screen will be displayed.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

The column "T" of the List Locked Users screen indicates the type of error which caused the user to be locked:

C	Countersign error
L	Logon error

In the case of a countersign error, the ID of the owner whose password was entered incorrectly and the ID of the object the locked user attempted to modify will be displayed next to the type.

In the case of a logon error, the error numbers will be displayed next to the type.

To select one entry from the list, you enter the corresponding sequential number (first column of the list) in the "Enter no. to be processed" field. A window will be displayed.

- If you wish to unlock the user, enter a "Y" in the window.
- If you do not wish to unlock the user, leave the "N" already entered in the window unchanged.

Note:

You may also unlock a locked user by modifying his/her security profile (as described in the section User Maintenance).

Deleting All Error Entries - Direct Command ERRDEL

With the Delete Error Entries function (described above), you can delete logon/countersign error entries page by page.

However, if you wish to delete *all* logon/countersign error entries at once, you enter the direct command ERRDEL in the command line.

Logon Records Processing

This function allows you to see which users have been using which libraries.

On the Set Library And User Defaults screen you may specify the library default "Logon recorded" (see Set Library and User Defaults above). Also, you may specify the option "Logon recorded" in the security profile of each library (and private library) and each user (see the sections Library Maintenance and User Maintenance respectively).

A logon record will be written by Natural Security:

- every time a user logs on to a library (or private library) in whose security profile the "Logon recorded" option is set to "Y";
- every time a user in whose security profile the "Logon recorded" option is set to "Y" logs on to any library.

If the general option "Transition Period Logon" (see above) is set to "Y", a logon record will also be written every time an undefined user logs on (regardless of the setting of the option "Logon recorded"), and every time a user logs on to an undefined library.

You may view these logon records by using the function "Logon records processing".

How to Invoke Logon Records Processing

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu, you select "Logon records processing". The Logon Records Processing Menu will be displayed, which provides the following functions.

Functions of Logon Records Processing

Each of these functions displays a list of logon records.

Function	Explanation
List Logon Records	With this function, you may view a list of logon records - and have the option to delete individual logon record entries.
Delete Logon Records	With this function, you may view a list of logon records - and have the option to delete whole pages of logon record entries.
Delete Logon Records But Last	With this function, you may view a list of logon records - and have the option to delete whole pages of logon record entries except the latest entry for each user ID (that is, the latest entry for each user ID will not be deleted).

When you select one of the above functions, you can specify the following selection options on the Logon Records Processing Menu:

Order of Records	<p>U The logon records will be listed in alphabetical order of user IDs.</p> <p>L The logon records will be listed in alphabetical order of library IDs.</p> <p>UX Same as "U", but listing only logon records of undefined users.</p> <p>LX Same as "L", but listing only logon records to undefined libraries.</p>
Start Value	If you do not wish to view a list of all logon records, but would like only certain logon records to be listed, you may specify a start value as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.
Date from/to Time from/to	If you wish to view only records of logon that occurred in a specific period of time, you may specify a period of time in these fields.

The Start Value and Date/Time options may be combined.

The Date/Time options only apply to the functions List Logon Records and Delete Logon Records; for the function Delete Logon Records But Last, they are ignored.

Deleting All Logon Records - Direct Command LOGDEL

With the above Delete functions, you can delete logon records page by page.

However, if you wish to delete *all* logon records at once, you enter the direct command LOGDEL in the command line.

Definition of System Libraries

This function is used as part of the installation procedure for an initial installation of Natural Security. It allows you to automatically create library security profiles for system libraries (that is, libraries whose names begin with "SYS") of Natural and its subproducts.

If you use this function, you have to set the Natural profile parameter MADIO to a value of at least "2000".

Do not apply this function to SYS libraries containing Natural utilities, as it is recommended that utilities be protected as described in the section Protecting Natural Utilities.

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu, you select "Definition of system libraries".

A list of the system libraries of Natural and all Natural subproducts installed at your site will be displayed. For each system library, a library-specific security profile is provided in which all the necessary components are already defined appropriately.

On the list, you can either mark with "AD" individual libraries to which you wish their pre-defined profiles to be applied one by one, or you can choose to have the pre-defined profiles applied to all product system libraries simultaneously by marking the corresponding product with "AD".

For further information, see the Natural Security installation description in your Natural Installation Guide.

Processing of Maintenance Log Records

This function can only be used if the general option "Logging of Maintenance Functions" has been activated. If this option has been activated, *log records* are written when security profiles and administrator services settings are modified. The writing of log records allows you to ascertain who has modified which security profiles and administrator services settings.

To view the log records, you use the function "Processing of maintenance log records".

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu 2, you select "Processing of maintenance log records". A menu will be displayed, from which you can select the following functions:

- Display Status of Logging Function
- List Administrator Services Maintenance Logs
- List Security Profile Maintenance Logs
- Log File Maintenance
- List Last Logon Records

Display Status of Logging Function

This function displays the following information:

- for which types of objects log records are written,
- the number of log records that have been written for each type of object,
- whether the option "Logging even if no actual modification" is set or not.

Note:

For this function, the fields "Object Type", "Start Value" and "Date from/to" on the menu have no effect.

List Administrator Services Maintenance Logs

This function displays a list of the log records that have been written for modifications to administrator services settings.

The log records are listed in chronological order.

On the list, the following information is displayed for each log record: the Administrator Services function performed, the ID of the user who made the modification, and the date and time of the modification.

On the list, you can mark a log record with any character: the screen on which the modification was made will then be displayed; on that screen, fields whose values were changed are displayed intensified.

By default, the "Date from/to" fields on the menu both contain the current date; that is, only the log records written today are listed. To list older log records, you change the date values on the menu as desired before you invoke this function.

Note:

For this function, the fields "Object Type" and "Start Value" on the menu have no effect.

List Security Profile Maintenance Logs

This function displays the log records that have been written for modifications to security profiles.

In the "Object type" field, you specify the type of object (USer, LLibrary, etc.) whose modified security profiles you wish to be listed. If you leave the field blank or enter a question mark (?), a window will be displayed in which you can select the desired object type. If you enter an asterisk (*), all log records for all security profiles will be listed.

In the "Start value" field, you can enter an object ID as start value for the list to be displayed.

By default, the "Date from/to" fields on the menu both contain the current date; that is, only the log records written today are listed. To list older log records, you change the date values on the menu as desired before you invoke this function.

The log records are listed in chronological order.

On the list, the following information is displayed for each log record: the function performed on the security profile, the ID of the security profile, the ID of the user who made the modification, and the date and time of the modification.

On the list, you can mark a log record with any character: the security profile in which the modification was made will then be displayed. If you press PF2 on the security profile screen, the fields whose values were changed will be displayed intensified (and, if applicable, a message will indicate whether an actual modification was made or not).

Log File Maintenance

On mainframes, this function can only be used in batch mode.

This function allows you to write/read the contents of the log file to/from a work file.

Log records have to be written to a work file when the log file becomes full. Thus, the work file serves as an "archive" for the log records.

The work files to be used are Work File 1 and Work File 5. On OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows, Work File 5 must be a file with the extension ".sag".

The output reports will be written to the print files CMPRT01 and CMPRT02.

When you invoke this function, you will be prompted to specify the database ID and file number of the log file. If you later wish to specify another log file, you press PF5 on the Log File Maintenance menu.

When you invoke this function, the Log File Maintenance menu is displayed, from which you can select the following functions:

Code	Function	Explanation
LI	List Log Records	This function is used to list the contents of the log file. The output contains the same information as displayed by the function List Security Profile Maintenance Logs: a list of all modified profiles/settings, as well as every profile concerned (indicating the profile components which were modified). The output consists of two reports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the "List of History Log Entries" report will be written to print file CMPRT01, ● the "Detail History Log Entries" report will be written to print file CMPRT02.
WR	Write Log Records to Work File	This function is used to write log records from the log file to Work File 5 (without deleting them from the log file).
WD	Write Log Records to Work File and Delete	This function is used to write log records from the log file to Work File 5, and delete them from the log file.
RA	Read Log Records from Work File	This function is used to read log records from Work File 5 onto the log file.
SA	Scan Work File	This function is used to scan the contents of Work File 5.

The Log File Maintenance function can also be invoked with the direct command LOGFILE.

Possible object types to be entered on the Log File Maintenance menu are:

*	all
AD	administration functions
AA	all (base and compound) applications
AB	base applications
AC	compound applications
DD or FI	DDMs/files
LI	libraries
MA	mailboxes
US	users

For object-type codes of external objects, see Types of External Objects.

Other parameters that can be specified on the Log File Maintenance menu are:

Start value	You can specify a start for the objects to be written/read.
Date from/to	If you wish to process only log records that were created in a specific period of time, you may specify a range of dates in these fields.
Work File 1	The name of Work File 1.
Work File 5	The name of Work File 5.

Example:

To write log records from the log file to Work File 5, the CMSYNIN batch input file would contain the following commands:

```
LOGFILE
FIN
```

The CMOBJIN batch input file might contain the following specifications:

```
SYSSEC, DBA, PASSWORD
22, 241
WR, US, , 2001-07-01, 2001-07-25
```

The first line must contain the library ID "SYSSEC" and the user ID and password of the respective Natural Security ADMINISTRATOR.

The second line must contain the database ID and file number of the log file from which the records are read.

The third line must contain the function code and object type (possible values are the same as on the Log File Maintenance menu) - optionally followed by various parameters (whose sequence and possible values correspond to those of the corresponding fields on the Log File Maintenance menu).

When you scan or read the work file, you have to specify the following parameter in the JCL:

```
WORK=( ( 5 ), OPEN=ACC)
```

Sample Batch Job 1 for Mainframes - Writing Log Records to Work File:

```
//DBA      JOB DBA, CLASS=K, MSGCLASS=X
//**
//** WRITE LOGGING OF MAINTENANCE DATA TO WORK FILE 5
//** DELETE RECORDS FROM LOG FILE
//**

//NSCnnBAT EXEC PGM=NATBATnn, REGION=2400K,
// PARM=( 'IM=D, FNAT=(22, 210), INTENS=1, FSEC=(22, 240), ',
//      'MT=0, MAXCL=0, MADIO=0, AUTO=OFF, WORK=( (5), OPEN=ACC) ' )
//STEPLIB DD  DSN=PRODNAT.LOAD, DISP=SHR
//DDCARD  DD  DISP=SHR, DSN=PRD.NATnn.JOBS(ADADB22)
//CMPRINT DD  SYSOUT=X
//CMWKF05  DD  DSN=NSC.LOG.WKF05,
//      DISP=(NEW, CATLG), DCB=(RECFM=VB, LRECL=4624, BLKSIZE=4628),
//      SPACE=(TRK, (5, 2))
//CMSYNIN  DD  *
SYSSEC, DBA, password
LOGFILE
22, 241
WD, US, , 2001-07-01, 2001-07-25
.
FIN
/*
/*
```

In the above example, the log records of all user security profiles modified between 1st and 25th July 2001 are written to Work File 5, and are then deleted from the log file.

Sample Batch Job 2 for Mainframes - Writing Log Record Reports to Printers:

```

//DBA          JOB DBA,CLASS=K,MSGCLASS=X
//**
//** LIST LOG RECORDS-WRITE REPORTS OF MAINTENANCE DATA TO PRINTER
//**
//NSCnnBAT EXEC PGM=NATBATnn,REGION=2400K,
// PARM=( 'IM=D, FNAT=(22,210), INTENS=1, FSEC=(22,240)', ' ,
//          'MT=0,MAXCL=0,MADIO=0,AUTO=OFF' )
//STEPLIB DD   DSN=PRODNAT.LOAD,DISP=SHR
//DDCARD  DD   DISP=SHR,DSN=PRD.NATnn.JOBS(ADADB22)
//** CMWKF01 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=NSC.LOG.WKF01
//** CMWKF05 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=NSC.LOG.WKF05
//CMPRINT DD SYSOUT=X
//CMPRT01 DD SYSOUT=X
//CMPRT02 DD SYSOUT=X
//CMSYNIN DD *
LOGFILE
FIN
/*
//CMOBJIN DD *
SYSSEC,DBA,password
22,241
LI,AD,,2001-06-06,2001-06-06
LI,US,MILL*,2001-05-01,2001-05-31
.
/*
//*

```

In the above example, the log records of all administrator services settings modified on 6th June 2001 and of all user security profiles modified in May 2001 are written to print files CMPRT01 (list of log records) and CMPRT02 (detailed log records information).

Sample Batch Job 3 for Mainframes - Reading Log Records from Work File:

```

//DBA          JOB DBA,CLASS=K,MSGCLASS=X
//**
//** READ LOGGING OF MAINTENANCE DATA FROM WORK FILE 5
//** INTO LOG FILE
//**
//NSCnnBAT EXEC PGM=NATBATnn,REGION=2400K,
// PARM=( 'IM=D, FNAT=(22,210), INTENS=1, FSEC=(22,240)', ' ,
//          'MT=0,MAXCL=0,MADIO=0,AUTO=OFF,WORK=((5),OPEN=ACC)' )
//STEPLIB DD   DSN=PRODNAT.LOAD,DISP=SHR
//DDCARD  DD   DISP=SHR,DSN=PRD.NATnn.JOBS(ADADB22)
//CMPRINT DD SYSOUT=X
//CMWKF05 DD   DSN=NSC.LOG.WKF05,DISP=(SHR)
//CMSYNIN DD *
SYSSEC,DBA,password
LOGFILE
22,241
RA,US,,2001-07-01,2001-07-25
.
FIN
/*
//*

```

In the above example, the log records of all user security profiles modified between 1st and 25th of July 2001 are read from Work File 5 and thus restored on the log file.

See also the section Natural Security In Batch Mode.

List Last Logon Records

Note:

This function is independent of the logging of maintenance functions. Internally, however, it uses the same log file.

This function evaluates the logon records that have been written by Natural Security (see Functions of Logon Records Processing above). It allows you to ascertain:

- when each user logged on last,
- which users have not logged on within the last n days.

When you invoke the function, a window will be displayed in which you enter a number of days:

- If you enter a "0", you will get a list of logon records showing the latest logon record written for each user.
- If you enter any other value n , you will get a list of logon records of those users who have not logged on in the last n days, showing for each of those users the last logon record written before the specified time interval.

The logon records are listed in chronological order.

Note:

For this function, the fields "Object Type", "Start Value" and "Date from/to" on the menu have no effect.

Definition of System File Access

This function is not available on mainframe computers.

This function allows you to control the access to the Natural system files which are defined in the Natural configuration file NATCONF.CFG.

How to Define the System File Access

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services above.

On the Administrator Services Menu 2, you select "Definition of system file access". A list of all system files defined in the Natural configuration file NATCONF.CFG will be displayed.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

For each system file, the DBID, the FNR and the "Access" status are displayed.

You can set the Access to one of the following:

Ma	Maintain - The system file is not protected; it can be accessed by any user (this is the default).
No	No access - The system file is protected; it can only be accessed by users who are linked to it.

To change the status of a system file, either you overwrite the value of the Access field, or you enter the value in the Code field (see below).

When you change it back to "Ma", all links to the file are automatically deleted.

The following functions are available for system files (possible code abbreviations are underlined>):

Code	Function
NO	Set access "No" - This function changes the Access status of the system file to "No".
MA	Set access "Ma" - This function resets the Access status of the system file to "Ma", and at the same time deletes all links to the system file.
LU	Link user - This function is used to link users to a protected system (as described below).
PA	Display path - This function displays the path name of the system file as defined in NATCONV.CFG. To display the path name, you can also place the cursor in the line containing the desired system file, and then press PF5.

To invoke a specific function for a system file, mark the file with the appropriate function code in column "Co".

You may select various system files for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several files on the screen with a function code. For each file marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another.

Linking Users to a Protected System File

To allow a user access to a protected system file, a *link* has to be established between the user and the system file.

Only users of types GROUP, ADMINISTRATOR and PERSON can be linked to a system file. Users of types ADMINISTRATOR and PERSON can be linked to a system file either directly or via a GROUP. Users of types MEMBER and TERMINAL can be linked to a system file only via a GROUP; that is, they must be assigned to a GROUP, and the GROUP be linked to the system file.

On the system file selection list, you mark the file to which you wish to link users with code "LU".

A window will be displayed in which you can enter a start value for the list of users to be displayed. Then, the Link Users To System File selection list will be displayed, showing the list of users.

By default, the list contains only users of type GROUP. To switch between a list of GROUPs and a list of all three user types, you press PF5.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the list, you mark the users you wish to be linked to the system file.

In the "Co" column, you may mark each user with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
LK	Link - The user may access the system file.
CL	Cancel - An existing link will be cancelled.
<u>DI</u>	Display user - The security profile of the user will be displayed.

You can mark one or more users on the screen with a function code. For each user marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect for each user.

User Maintenance

This section describes how to create and maintain *user security profiles*. It covers the following topics:

- Before You Begin
 - How to Invoke User Maintenance
 - Components of a User Profile
 - Adding a New User
 - Adding Multiple New Users
 - Selecting Existing Users for Processing
 - Copying a User
 - Modifying a User
 - Renaming a User
 - Deleting a User
 - Displaying a User
 - Editing Group Members
-

Before You Begin

Before you begin to define users to Natural Security, we recommend that you take a few preparatory steps:

- Make a list of all people in your organization who are using Natural.
- Divide them into groups according to the work they do and in view of the libraries they are to use. The division of your company into departments may be a guideline. People using the same libraries should be in the same groups. (People may be in more than one group.)

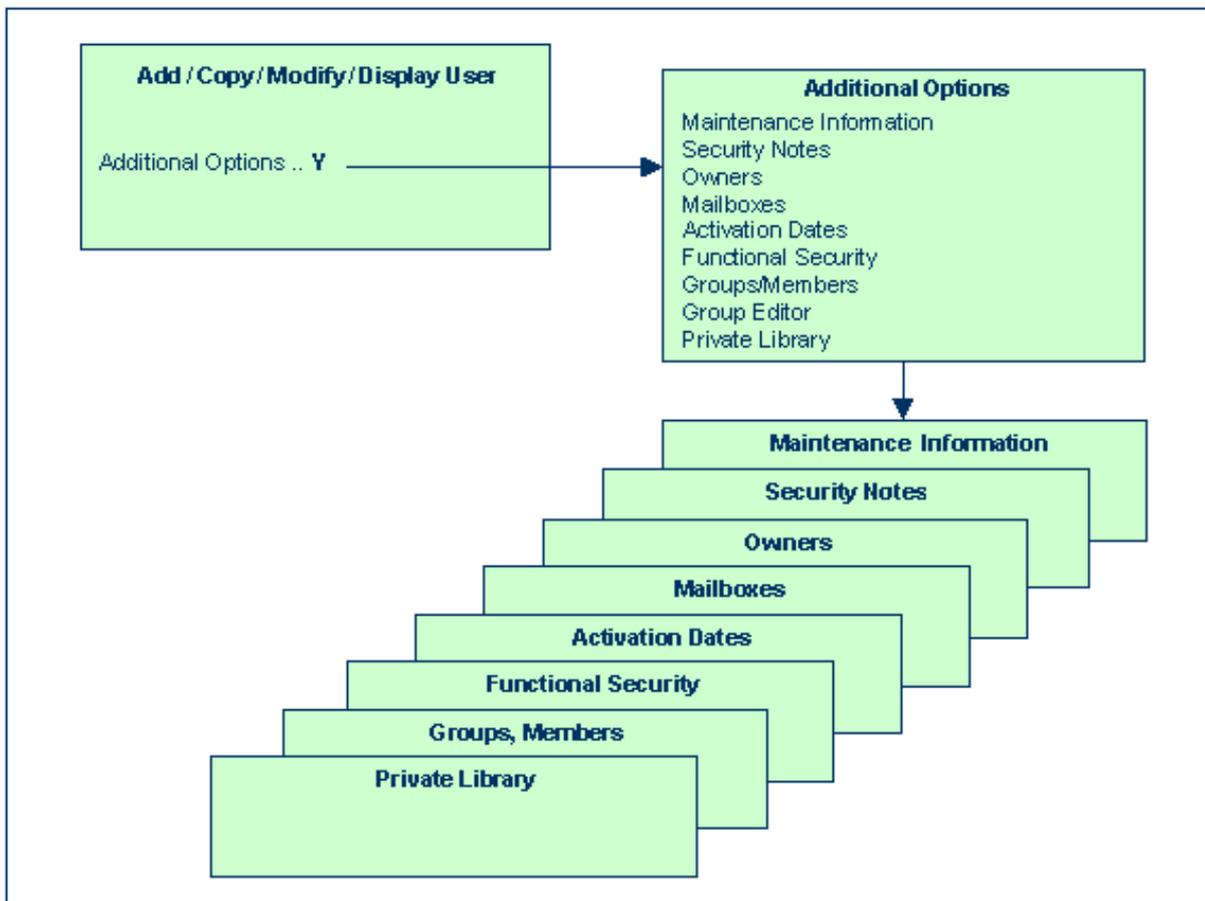
The definition of users to Natural Security and the assignment of users to groups is best done in the following order:

1. Create a group security profile; that is, define a user of type GROUP.
2. Create individual user security profiles; that is, define users of type MEMBER.
3. Assign MEMBERS to the GROUP; that is, modify the GROUP security profile.

How to Invoke User Maintenance

1. On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance".
A window will be displayed.
2. In the window, mark the object type "User" with a character or with the cursor.
The User Maintenance selection list will be displayed. From this selection list, you invoke all user maintenance functions as described below.

Components of a User Profile



The following type of screen is the "basic" user profile screen, which appears when you invoke one of the functions Add, Copy, Modify, Display for a user security profile:

```

15:27:08                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                1999-08-13
                        - Modify User -

User ID ..... AD                Modified ..                by
User Name .... ARTHUR DENT_____
User Type .... A (A=Administrator, P=Person, M=Member)

Privil. Groups                Libraries                Password
-----
DOC_____                Default .. SYSSEC__                New Password _____
_____                Last .....                Change after 666 days
_____
_____                ETID                Batch User ID ..... _____
_____                -----                Language ..... 0
No. groups 3                Default .. AR1R G                Private Library ... N
Last .....                Last .....                Logon recorded .... N

Additional Options ... N

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp PrLib Flip                                Canc
    
```

The individual items you may define as part of a user security profile are explained below.

The items of a user security profile may vary depending on the user type. For each item explained below, the user types concerned are indicated in brackets. If no user types are indicated, the item applies to users of every type.

Field	Explanation
User ID (display only)	The ID of the user as specified when the user security profile was created.
User Name	The name of the user, which may be up to 32 characters long. This name should be identical to the corresponding entry in Predict (if installed).
User Type	<p>G = Group,</p> <p>M = Member,</p> <p>P = Person,</p> <p>A = Administrator,</p> <p>T = Terminal,</p> <p>B = Batch User.</p>
Privileged Groups (A, P, M, T, B)	<p>You may enter the IDs of up to five groups to which the user belongs. By this, you may influence the order in which Natural Security scans for a link to a library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● For users of type MEMBER the following applies: When the user tries to log on to a protected library, the privileged groups entered in his/her security profile are checked (in order of entry) for a link to the library before the other groups to which the user belongs are checked (in alphabetical order) for a link to the library. ● For users of type ADMINISTRATOR and PERSON the following applies: When the user tries to log on to a protected library to which he or she is not linked directly, the privileged groups entered in his/her security profile are checked (in order of entry) for a link to the library before the other groups to which the user belongs are checked (in alphabetical order) for a link to the library. ● For TERMINALS, the following applies: When a user tries to log on to a protected library by means of the terminal ID (that is, without entering a user ID), the privileged groups in the terminal's security profile are checked (in order of entry) for a link to the library before the other groups to which the terminal belongs are checked (in alphabetical order) for a link to the library. <p>You may enter a group in the Privileged Groups column only after the user has been added to the group.</p> <p>If you delete a group from the user's Privileged Groups list, the user will <i>not</i> be deleted as a member of that group.</p>
Members (G)	<p>You may enter the IDs of the first five users to belong to this group. If the number of users belonging to the group exceeds five, use the Edit Group Members functions (see Editing Group Members below).</p> <p>You can assign users to a group only after they have been defined to Natural Security.</p>
No. of Groups (A, P, M, T, B; display only)	The total number of groups to which the user belongs (including the Privileged Groups). By means of the "Additional Options" (see below), you can obtain a list of all these groups.

Field	Explanation
No. of Members (G; display only)	The total number of users which belong to the group. By means of the "Additional Options" (see below), you can obtain a list of all these users.
Default Library	<p>In this field, you may enter the ID of a default library.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● For users of type ADMINISTRATOR, PERSON, or MEMBER the following applies: The default library specified in a user's security profile will be invoked automatically when the user logs on to Natural without entering a library ID. ● For TERMINALS, the following applies: The default library specified in a terminal's security profile will be invoked automatically when a user logs on to Natural by means of the terminal without entering a library ID. ● For GROUPS, the following applies: The library specified in a group's security profile will be invoked automatically when a user logs on to Natural without entering a library ID if the user has no default library specified in his/her own security profile, and if the group is among the privileged groups listed in the user's security profile.
Last Library (A, P, M, T, B; display only)	The last RESTARTable library to which the user was logged on. (The Restart option in a library profile determines whether a library can be RESTARTed.)
Default ETID (A, P, M, T, B)	<p>This field displays the ID to identify End of Transaction data.</p> <p>If the ETID displayed is followed by a "G", this indicates that it has been generated. If it has not been generated and you wish it to be generated, enter a "?" in the ETID field.</p> <p>On the Set Library and User Defaults screen (which is described in the section Administrator Services), you may specify whether ETIDs are to be generated by Natural Security or not:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If ETIDs are <i>not</i> generated, the ETID displayed in a user security profile will be identical to the corresponding user ID. This user ID may be either the Natural Security user ID, the TP user ID, or the terminal ID (see Set Library and User Defaults for details). ● If ETIDs are generated, Natural Security will generate an ETID of 8 bytes in length during the logon procedure from the following components: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The 1st byte will be a single character that identifies the environment from which Natural is invoked (B=Batch, C=Color, P=PC, T=TTY, V=Video, X=BTX). ○ The 2nd to 5th bytes will be a unique string of alphanumeric characters that identifies the user (this string is generated when a user is defined to Natural Security). Only these 4 bytes are displayed in the user's security profile. ○ The 6th to 8th byte will be a unique string of alphanumeric characters that identifies the library (this string is generated when a library is defined to Natural Security). <p>Note: The ETID specified here may be overridden by the Natural profile parameter ETID (which is described in the Natural Reference documentation).</p>
Last ETID (A, P, M, T, B; display only)	The ETID which was last generated/set for the user.

Field	Explanation
<p>New Password (A, P, M)</p>	<p>You may enter a password for the user to be used when he or she logs on.</p> <p>This password may be modified by the user (during the logon procedure) or by an owner of the user's security profile (in the security profile).</p> <p>If no password is entered here, Natural Security will assume the password to be identical to the user ID.</p> <p>The minimum length of the password is set in the Set General Options section of Administrator Services.</p>
<p>Change after nnn days (A, P, M)</p>	<p>In this field, you may specify a time interval after which the user will be forced to change his or her password during the logon procedure.</p> <p>For example, if you set the time interval to "007", the user will have to enter a new password on the logon screen every 7 days. If the user fails to do so, he or she cannot log on.</p>
<p>Batch User ID (A, P, M, G)</p>	<p>If the Natural system variable *DEVICE is set to "BATCH", the following applies:</p> <p>You may enter the ID of a batch user profile. Before you can enter a batch user ID, a security profile for this batch user ID must have been defined.</p> <p>In batch mode, a user logs on with his/her "normal" user ID and password. Natural Security will then use the batch user ID specified in the user's security profile, and the conditions of use defined for that batch user ID will apply.</p> <p>If no batch user ID is specified in the user's security profile, the "Privileged Groups" specified in the user's security profile will be checked (in order of entry) for a batch user ID. If none of the Privileged Groups has a batch user ID either, the user's own user ID will be used.</p> <p>Note: This option only applies if the Natural system variable *DEVICE is set to "BATCH"; otherwise, this option has no effect.</p>
<p>Language (A, P, M, B)</p>	<p>This corresponds to the Natural system variable *LANGUAGE and controls the usage of Natural error messages.</p> <p>You may enter a numeric value from 1 to 60. Each value represents one language (for example, "1" stands for "English"). If you set the value to "0", the value of the Natural profile parameter ULANG applies.</p> <p>For further information, see the system variable *LANGUAGE and the profile parameter ULANG in the Natural Reference documentation.</p>

Field	Explanation
Time Differential (T)	<p>This only applies to an environment in which remote nodes are used in a computer network. It corresponds to the Natural profile parameter TD (which is described in the Natural Reference documentation).</p> <p>You may enter a value from "-23" to "+23" for hours, and "00" or "30" for minutes. The values indicate the number of hours/minutes added to/subtracted from computer centre time to obtain local time. The default value is "0" (which means that computer centre time will be used).</p> <p>If, for example, terminal location time is 5 hours ahead of computer centre time, you may set the value to "+5" if you wish to use actual local time instead of computer centre time.</p> <p>You can also specify an asterisk "*"; this has the same effect as the profile parameter setting TD=AUTO (that is, the time differential will be computed automatically by comparison of physical and logical machine times).</p>
Private Library (A, P)	You may specify whether the user shall have a private library. See the section Private Libraries for details.
Logon recorded (A, P, M, T, B)	<p>All logons by the user to any library will be recorded.</p> <p>See Logon Records Processing in the section Administrator Services for information on logon records.</p>

Additional Options

If you mark the field "Additional Options" on the basic security profile screen with "Y", a window will be displayed from which you can select the following options:

- Maintenance Information
- Security Notes
- Owners
- Mailboxes
- Activation Dates
- Functional Security
- Groups/Members
- Group Editor
- Private Library
- Session Options

The options for which something has already been specified or defined are marked with a plus sign (+).

Some options are only available for certain user types.

You can select one or more items from the window by marking them with any character. For each item selected, an additional window/screen will be displayed (in the order of the items in the selection window).

The Private Library screen can also be invoked directly by pressing PF5 on the basic security profile screen.

The individual options are explained below.

Additional Option	Explanation
-------------------	-------------

Maintenance Information (display only)	In this window, the following information is displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the date and time when the security profile was created, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who created it, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the creation; ● the date and time when the security profile was last modified, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who made the last modification, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the modification.
Security Notes	In this window, you may enter your notes on the security profile.
Owners	<p>In this window, you may enter up to eight IDs of ADMINISTRATORS. Only the ADMINISTRATORS specified here will be allowed to maintain this user security profile.</p> <p>If no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may maintain the security profile.</p> <p>For each owner, the number of co-owners whose countersignatures will be required for maintenance permission may optionally be specified in the field after the ID.</p> <p>For information on owners and co-owners, see the section Countersignatures.</p>
Mailboxes	<p>In this window, you may enter up to five mailbox IDs.</p> <p>For information on mailboxes, see the section Mailboxes.</p>
Activation Dates (A, P, M, G)	<p>In this window, you may define dates as of which or until when the security profile shall be valid.</p> <p>The message "This security profile is currently not active." is displayed if the security profile is not yet or no longer or temporarily not valid, which means that the corresponding user ID cannot be used before or after a certain date or within a certain period of time.</p>
Functional Security	<p>In this window, you may define functional security for the user with respect to the command processors defined in the libraries the user has access to.</p> <p>This is only relevant if command processors have been created with the Natural utility SYSNCP. See the section Functional Security for details.</p>
Groups/Members (display only)	<p>If you mark this field, a list of all groups to which the user belongs will be displayed.</p> <p>If the user is a GROUP, a list of all users who belong to the GROUP will be displayed.</p>
Group Editor (G)	<p>If you mark this field, the Edit Group Members function will be invoked. This function is explained under Editing Group Members below.</p>
Private Library (A, P)	<p>You may define a private library for the user. See the section Private Libraries for details.</p>

Session Options (A, P, G)	<p>UNLOCK Objects - This option controls the use of the Natural system command UNLOCK, which is used in conjunction with the Natural Development Server. You can specify one of the following values:</p> <p>N The user cannot use the UNLOCK command.</p> <p>Y The user can use the UNLOCK command, but only for his/her own programming objects (that is, objects locked under his/her user ID).</p> <p>F The user can use the UNLOCK command for any locked programming object.</p> <p>The default value is "Y".</p>
-------------------------------------	--

Adding a New User

The Add User function is used to define new users to Natural Security, that is, create user security profiles.

When you add a new user, you have to specify a *user ID* and a *user type* (and, optionally, the ID of a *default profile*).

User ID

The user ID is used by Natural Security to identify the user. It may be 1 to 8 characters long. The ID must be unique among all user IDs and library IDs defined to Natural Security. For user IDs, the same naming conventions apply as for library IDs (see the section Library Maintenance).

- If the user is an individual, usually an ID is chosen which is related to the user's name.
- If the user is a terminal, the ID must be identical to the terminal ID by which the terminal is defined to the computer (see your system programmer).
- If the user is a group, choose whatever ID you like.

User Type

When you add a user, you must specify the code for one of the following user types:

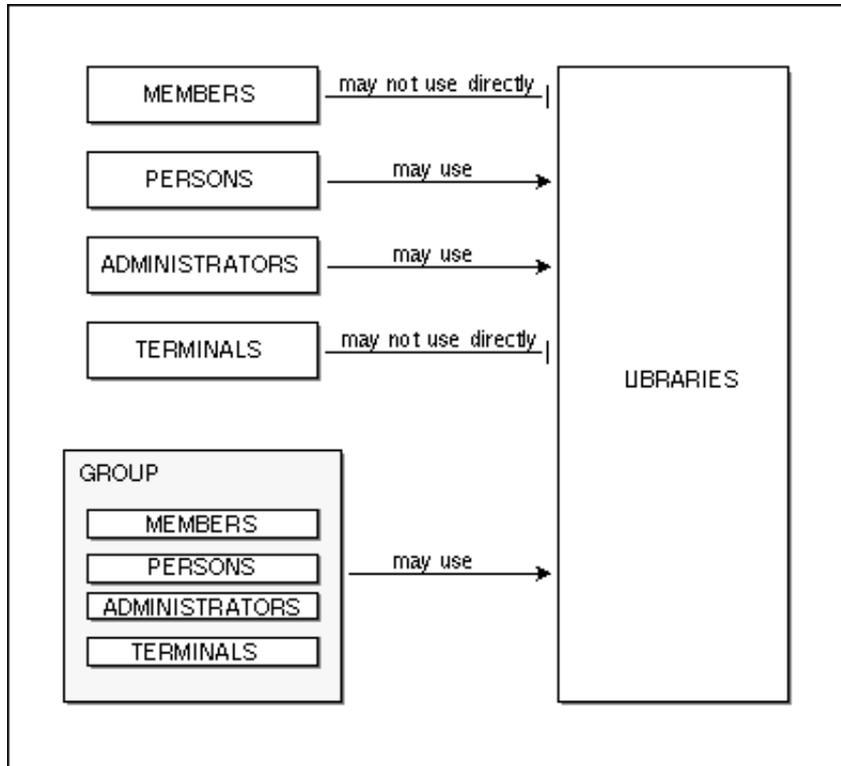
Code	User Type
G	Group
M	Member
P	Person
A	Administrator
T	Terminal
B	Batch User (see Batch User Security Profiles in the section Natural Security in Batch Mode)

If the user to be defined is a group, the user type must be "G".

If the user to be defined is a terminal, the user type must be "T".

If the user to be defined is an individual, the user type should be "M" (except individuals who are Natural Security administrators and have to be user type "A").

The access rights of different types of users to libraries are summarized in the following diagram:



If you have doubts about the correct user type specification, please refer to Users in the section The Structure And Terminology Of Natural Security..

Once an individual has been defined, you may at a later stage change his/her user type classification (as explained under Upgrading and Downgrading Users below.

Default Profile

When you add a new user, you can either type in every item within the user security profile by hand; or you can use a pre-defined default user profile as the basis for the security profile you are creating.

Before you use default user profiles, you should be familiar with the "normal" way of defining users (that is, without default profile).

Default profiles are created and maintained in the Administrator Services subsystem.

The *user type* of the default profile you specify must be the same as that of the user security profile you are creating.

If you specify the ID of a default profile in the Add User window, the following items will be copied from the default profile into the user profile:

- the default library,
- the password change interval,
- the language indicator,
- the time differential
- the activation dates,
- the batch user ID,
- the mailboxes,

- the security notes,
- the "Logon recorded" setting,
- the session options.

On the Add User screen, you can then overwrite the items copied into the user profile and specify further items.

For further information on default user profiles, see Default User Profiles in the section Administrator Services.

Note:

To define numerous users who are to have identical security profiles, you can also use the "Multiple Add User" function (see Adding Multiple New Users below).

How to Add a New User

In the command line of the User Maintenance selection list, you enter the command:

ADD

A window will be displayed. In this window, you enter the following:

- a *user ID*,
- a *user type* specification,
- the ID of a *default profile* (optional).

The Add User screen for the specified user type will be displayed. On this screen you may define a security profile for the user.

The Add User screen and the subsequent screens/windows that may be part of a user security profile as well as the individual items you may define are described under Components of a User Profile above.

When you add a new user, the owners specified in your own user security profile will automatically be copied into the user security profile you are creating.

Adding Multiple New Users

Before you use the Multiple Add User function you should be familiar with the "normal" way of defining users (as described under Adding a New User above).

The Multiple Add User function allows you to define large numbers of users to Natural Security in a fast and easy way. You may use this function if you wish to define numerous users who are to have identical security profiles.

In the command line of the User Maintenance selection list, you enter the command:

ADDM

A window will be displayed. In this window, enter a *user ID* and a *user type* specification (and, optionally, the ID of a *default profile*).

The Multiple Add User screen for the specified user type will be displayed. On this screen you may define a security profile for the user.

The Multiple Add User screen and the subsequent screens/windows that may be part of a user security profile as well as the individual items you may define are described under Components of a User Profile above.

When you add a new user, the owners specified in your own user security profile will automatically be copied into the user security profile you are creating.

To create multiple user security profiles

1. On the first screen (and any additional screens/windows), you define a security profile for one user.
2. Once you have finished typing in the items to be defined and are back on the Multiple Add User screen without any additional screens/windows being active, press ENTER.
The first user is now defined.
3. Then press PF5 - the same security profile will be displayed again omitting the user ID and user name entries.
Type in a user ID and the name of the next user and press ENTER.
The second user is now defined.
4. Then press PF5 - the same security profile will be displayed again omitting the user ID and user name entries.
In this manner, you may continue to define more users all with identical security profiles.
5. To leave the Multiple Add User function, press PF3.

Selecting Existing Users for Processing

When you invoke the User Maintenance subsystem, a list of all users that have been defined to Natural Security will be displayed.

If you do not wish to get a list of all existing users but would like only certain users to be listed, you may use the Start Value and Type/Status options as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance". A window will be displayed. In the window, mark the object type "User" with a character or with the cursor (and, if desired, enter a start value and/or user type). The User Maintenance selection list will be displayed:

```

11:11:11                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                1999-08-13
                        - User Maintenance -

Co User ID  User Name                                     Type Message
-----
___ AAZ     ABDUL ALHAZRED                                   A
___ AD      ARTHUR DENT                                           A
___ AH      ALICE HARGREAVES                                       M
___ AP      ABNER PERRY                                           M
___ BD      BUCK DHARMA                                           M
___ CDW     CHARLES DEXTER WARD                                    A
___ DI      DAVID INNES                                           A
___ EW      ESMERALDA WEATHERWAX                                  M
___ HC      HAGBARD CELINE                                        A
___ HW      HENRY WILT                                           A
___ IW      IRENE WILDE                                          M
___ RC      RANDOLPH CARTER                                       P
___ RFB     RICHARD FRANCIS BURTON                                M
___ TD      THOMAS DUNSON                                        P
___ VV     VINCENT VEGA                                          M

Command ==>
Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help           Exit           Flip -      +           Canc
    
```

For each user, the user ID, user name and user type are displayed.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

The following user maintenance functions are available (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
<u>CO</u>	Copy user
<u>MO</u>	Modify user
RE	Rename user
DE	Delete user
<u>DI</u>	Display user
EG	Edit group members
LA	Link user to applications
LL	Link user to libraries
LO	Link user to external objects
MD	Modify DDM restrictions in user's private library (this function is not available on mainframes)

To invoke a specific function for a user, mark the user with the appropriate function code in column "Co".

You may select various users for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several users on the screen with a function code. For each user marked, the appropriate processing screen will be displayed. You may then perform for one user after another the selected functions.

Copying a User

The Copy User function is used to define a new user to Natural Security by creating a security profile which is identical to an already existing user security profile.

What is Copied?

All components of the existing security profile will be copied into the new security profile - *except*:

- the user name,
- the password,
- the ETID (which identifies End of Transaction data),
- the owners (these will be copied from your own user security profile into the new user security profile you are creating).

Whether the groups entered in the "Privileged Groups" column and any links to libraries are copied depends on whether you copy with or without links (see below).

How to Copy

On the User Maintenance selection list, mark the user whose security profile you wish to duplicate with function code "CO". A window will be displayed. In this window, specify the following:

- **To user:** Enter the ID of the "new" user.
- **With links:** If you wish links *not* to be copied, leave the "N" in this field untouched; if you wish any links existing for the existing user also to apply to the new user, type in a "Y" (see below for details).

The Copy User screen will be displayed showing the new security profile.

The Copy User screen and the subsequent screens/windows that may be part of a user security profile as well as the individual items you may define are described under Components of a User Profile above.

Copying Without Links

If you leave the "N" in the "with links" field of the Copy User window:

- the groups entered in the "Privileged Groups" column of the existing user will not be copied into the new user security profile;
- any links defined for the existing user will not apply to the new user;
- any user-specific and user-library-specific utility profiles for the existing user will not apply to the new user.

Copying With Links

If you enter a "Y" in the "with links" field of the Copy User window,

- any links that existed for the existing user are copied for the new user, and you have the option to cancel the links you wish not to apply for the new user;
- the new user will be added to all groups in which the existing user is contained (and all access right of the groups to libraries then also apply for the new user), and you have the option to delete the new user from any of these groups;
- any user-specific and user-library specific utility profiles that existed for the existing user are copied for the new user.

The procedure is as follows:

- Once you have made any changes to the copied security profile and then leave the Copy User screen by pressing PF3, a list of libraries is displayed: the list contains all libraries to which the existing user is linked directly.
- On the list, you may mark individual libraries with "CL" to cancel any links you wish *not* to apply for the new user; to all libraries you do not mark, the new user will automatically be linked in the same manner - normal or special link - as the existing user.
- Once you have established all direct links and then leave the list of libraries by pressing PF3, a list of groups is displayed: the list contains all groups in which the existing user is contained.
- On the list you may mark with "CL" the groups to which you wish the new user *not* to be added; the new user will automatically be added to all groups you do not mark. If any of the groups to which the new user is added is entered as "Privileged Group" in the security profile of the existing user, they will automatically also be entered as "Privileged Groups" in the new user security profile.

Modifying a User

The Modify User function is used to change an existing user security profile.

On the User Maintenance selection list, mark the user whose security profile you wish to change with function code "MO". The Modify User screen will be displayed.

The Modify User screen and the subsequent screens/windows that may be part of a user security profile as well as the individual items you may define or modify are described under Components of a User Profile above.

Upgrading and Downgrading Users

If need be, you may change the user type classification of an individual.

If you wish to change the user type, first type in the new user type and press ENTER to obtain the appropriate Modify User screen before you further modify the security profile, because the Modify User screens for the different user types are not identical to one another.

Upgrading a User

You may "promote" a MEMBER to become a PERSON or an ADMINISTRATOR; and you may "promote" a PERSON to become an ADMINISTRATOR.

Downgrading a User

You may downgrade an ADMINISTRATOR to become a PERSON or a MEMBER; and you may downgrade a PERSON to become a MEMBER.

- Before you can downgrade a user from ADMINISTRATOR to PERSON, you have to remove him/her as owner from every security profile in which he/she is specified as owner. As long as an ADMINISTRATOR is still owner of any security profile, he/she cannot be downgraded.
- Before you can downgrade a user from ADMINISTRATOR to MEMBER, you have to perform the following:
 - You have to remove him/her as owner from every security profile in which he/she is specified as owner. As long as an ADMINISTRATOR is still owner of any security profile, he/she cannot be downgraded.
 - You have to cancel all direct links from the user to libraries/external objects. As long as the user is linked to any library or external object, he/she cannot become a MEMBER.
 - You have to delete the ADMINISTRATOR's private library (if defined). As long as the user has a private library, he/she cannot become a MEMBER.
- Before you can downgrade a user from PERSON to MEMBER, you have to cancel all direct links from the user to libraries/external objects. As long as the user is linked to any library or external object, he/she cannot become a MEMBER.
In addition, you have to delete the PERSON's private library (if defined). As long as the user has a private library, he/she cannot become a MEMBER.

User Locked?

When the "Lock User Option" (described in the section Administrator Services) is active, it may occur that the user security profile has been locked.

If the security profile is locked, this will be indicated on the Modify User screen by the message "This user is currently locked due to logon/countersign error!" If you enter a "Y" in the "Unlock? (Y/N)" field, a window will be displayed which provides detailed information on how and when the locking occurred. In that window you may also unlock the security profile.

Note:

You may also view and unlock locked users by means of the "List/Unlock Locked Users" function (which is described in the section Administrator Services).

Renaming a User

The Rename User function allows you to change the user ID of an existing user security profile.

On the User Maintenance selection list, you mark the user whose ID you wish to change with function code "RE". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a new ID for the user (and, optionally, change the user's name).

An ADMINISTRATOR who is an owner of one or more security profiles cannot be renamed. A user who is specified as DDM modifier in one or more DDM/file security profiles, cannot be deleted either.

Deleting a User

The Delete User function is used to delete an existing user security profile.

On the User Maintenance selection list, you mark the user you wish to delete with function code "DE". A window will be displayed.

- If you have invoked the Delete User function and should then decide against deleting the given user security profile, leave the Delete User window by pressing ENTER without having typed in anything.
- If you wish to delete the given user security profile, enter the user's ID in the window to confirm the deletion.

An ADMINISTRATOR who is an owner of one or more security profiles cannot be deleted. A user who is specified as DDM modifier in one or more DDM/file security profiles, cannot be deleted either.

If you mark more than one user with "DE", a window will appear in which you are asked whether you wish to confirm the deletion of each user security profile by entering the user's ID, or whether all users selected for deletion are to be deleted without this individual confirmation. Be careful not to delete a user accidentally.

Note:

If you delete a GROUP security profile, this will *not* delete the individual security profiles of the users assigned to this GROUP.

Displaying a User

The Display User function is used to display an existing user security profile.

On the User Maintenance selection list, mark the user whose security profile you wish to view with function code "DI". The Display User screen will be displayed.

The items displayed on the Display User screen and any additional windows that may be part of a user security profile are explained under Components of a User Profile above.

User Locked?

When the "Lock User Option" (described in the section Administrator Services) is active, it may occur that the user security profile has been locked.

If the security profile is locked, this will be indicated on the Display User screen by the message "This user is currently locked due to logon/countersign error!" If you enter a "Y" in the "Lock Info (Y/N)" field, a window will be displayed which provides detailed information on how and when the locking occurred.

Editing Group Members

The Edit Group Members function is used to assign users to or delete users from a group.

As long as the number of users assigned to a group does not exceed 5, the group members may be maintained in the "Members" column of the group's security profile by using the Modify User function. For larger groups, membership maintenance has to be done with the Edit Group Members function.

You can invoke the Edit Group Members function either from the User Maintenance selection list or from within a group's security profile:

- On the User Maintenance selection list, mark the group you wish to edit with function code "EG".
- In a group's security profile, mark the option "Group Editor" in the Additional Options window with any character.

The Edit Group Members screen will be displayed:

>	ALL	User ID	> + Gr ELGRUPO User Name	Type	Size 5	Line 1
		-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
		AD	ARTHUR DENT	A		
		HW	HENRY WILT	A		
		IW	IRENE WILDE	M		
		JD	JOHN DAKER	M		
		T2112	WEINRIB'S TERMINAL	T		

The Edit Group Members screen is a modified Natural program editor. When you invoke it, the users already contained in the given group are read into the source area. The list of group members will be in alphabetical order of user IDs. For each user, the user ID, user name and user type are displayed.

To add a user to the group, add the user ID to the list. To delete a user from the group, delete the user ID from the list.

Remember that users have to be defined to Natural Security before they can be added to a group.

It does not matter in which order you add new user IDs: when you catalog the list of group members (see command "CAT" below), they will automatically be sorted alphabetically.

To edit the list, you may use the Natural program editor scrolling commands, line commands and editor commands (as described in your Natural User's Guide).

To add *all* users contained in one group to the group you are editing, enter the command "INCLUDE *group-ID*" in the command line of the Edit Group Members screen. All users contained in the group whose ID you specify with the INCLUDE command will then be added to the list. They will be included before the user who is displayed in the top line of the screen.

Remember that a user of type "group" must not be contained within another group.

Modifications are only processed in the source area until you enter the command "CAT" in the command line (or press PF3). This command first invokes a procedure which checks for duplicate IDs. If the IDs are unique, the edited list of members will be entered in the group's security profile.

With the command "CHECK" you invoke the checking procedure only.

To leave the Edit Group Members screen, enter a period (.) in the command line.

Library Maintenance

This section describes how to create and maintain *librarysecurity profiles*. It covers the following topics:

- Before You Begin
 - How to Invoke Library Maintenance
 - Components of a Library Profile
 - Adding a New Library
 - Selecting Existing Libraries for Processing
 - Copying a Library
 - Modifying a Library
 - Renaming a Library
 - Deleting a Library
 - Displaying a Library
-

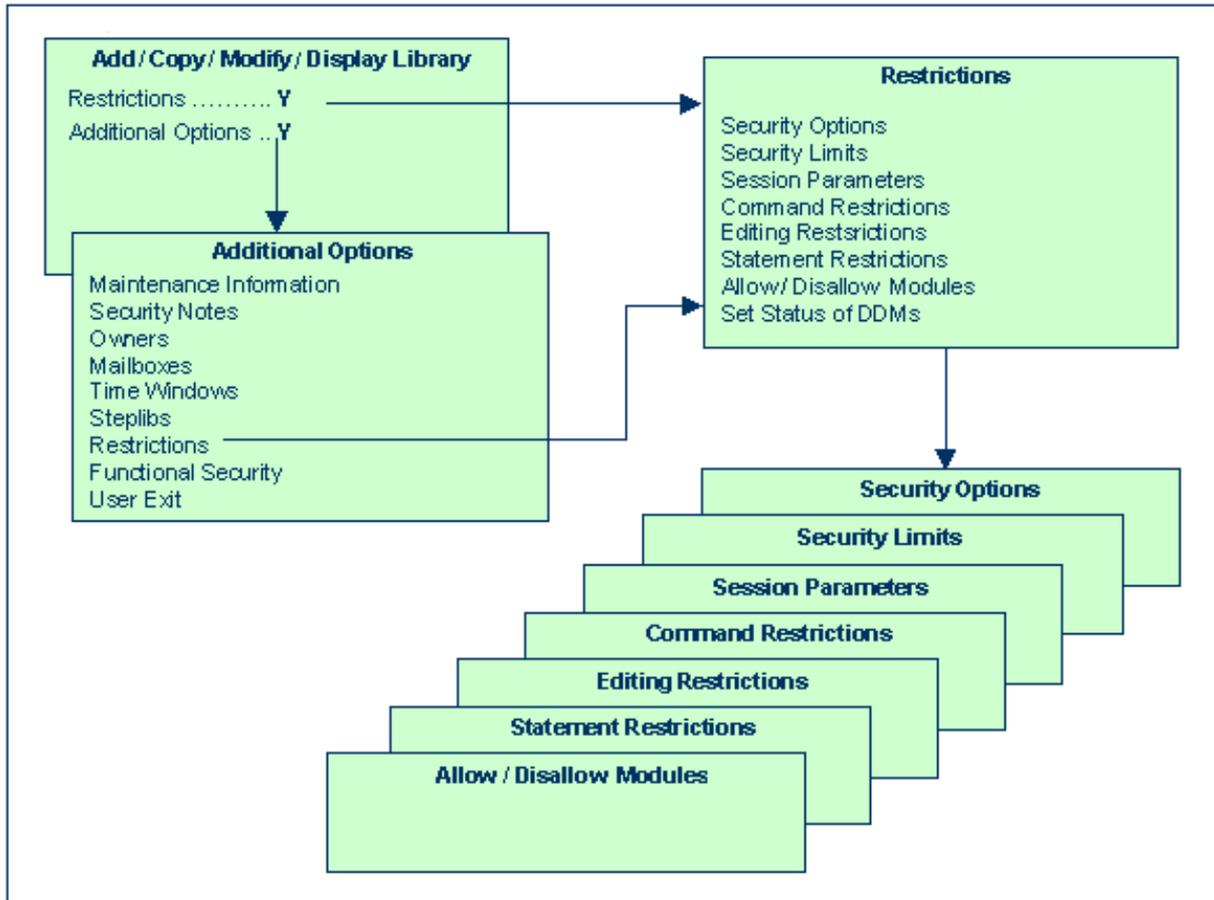
Before You Begin

A library is defined to Natural Security by creating a library security profile. This library security profile determines the conditions under which the library may be used.

How to Invoke Library Maintenance

1. On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance".
A window will be displayed.
2. In the window, mark object type "Library" with a character or with the cursor.
The Library Maintenance selection list will be displayed. From this selection list, you invoke all library maintenance functions as described below.

Components of a Library Profile



The following type of screen is the "basic" library security profile screen, which appears when you invoke one of the functions Add, Copy, Modify, Display for a library security profile:

```

14:00:00                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                1999-08-13
                        - Modify Library -

                                Modified .. 1999-06-20 by SAG
Library ID ..... TESTLIB
Library Name ... _____

      General Options          Library File          Transactions
-----
People-protected .... Y      DBID ..... _____      Startup ..... _____
Terminal-protected .. N      FNR ..... _____      Batch execution .. Y
Restrictions ..... Y        Password .... _____      Restart ..... _____
Logon recorded ..... Y      CIPHERCODE .. _____      Error ..... _____
Utilities ..... O
Programming mode .... R
Cross-reference ..... N
Restart ..... Y

Additional Options ... N

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp Restr Flip                                Canc
    
```

The individual items you may define as parts of a library security profile are explained below.

Field	Explanation
Library ID (display only)	The ID of the library as specified when the library security profile was created.
Library Name	You may enter a name for the library, which may be up to 32 characters long.

General Options

Field	Explanation
People-protected/ Terminal-protected	You may specify whether the library is to be <i>people-protected</i> and/or <i>terminal-protected</i> in order to restrict the use of the library. The possible combinations of protection are described under Protected Libraries in the section Protecting Libraries.
Restrictions	<p>Special restrictions may be defined for the library, as described under Additional Options below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If no restrictions are defined, the system profile defined in the Natural parameter module applies. ● If restrictions are defined, the value of this field is automatically set to "Y". If you set it to "N" again, any specification you have made in the restrictions will automatically be deleted!
Logon recorded	All logons to the library will be recorded (see Logon Records Processing in the section Administrator Services for information on logon records).
Utilities	<p>The sources/objects contained in the library may be maintained by Natural utilities (N=No protection, O=by Owners only, P=under Protection rules). This applies to the utilities SYSERR and SYSMAIN, and to the system command SCAN; see the section System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism for details.</p> <p>This option refers to the old utility protection mechanism. Instead of this option, it is recommended that the new utility protection mechanism be used; see the section Protecting Natural Utilities.</p>
Programming mode	<p>Natural programming mode:</p> <p>S (= Structured mode) - The programming mode to be used cannot be changed with the Natural parameter SM, and structured mode will invariably be in effect.</p> <p>R (= Reporting mode) - The setting of the Natural profile/session parameter SM (described in the Natural Reference documentation) determines the mode to be used.</p>
Cross-reference	An active cross-reference in Predict (if installed) will be generated (Y = yes, N = no, F = force, D = doc). See the Predict documentation for details.
Restart	<p>Y The library may be re-invoked by entering "RESTART" as the library ID on the logon screen; an Adabas OPEN command with ETID will be executed.</p> <p>N The library cannot be "RESTARTed". The ETID specified in Natural Security will not be used for the Adabas OPEN command.</p>
Version control (display only)	<p>This field only applies on mainframe computers and if the library is under control of Predict Application Control.</p> <p>This field indicates the version control status of the library. If the library is controlled by Predict Application Control, the database ID (DBID) and file number (FNR) of the FDIC system file in which the library's Predict data are stored are also displayed.</p>

Library File

The items under Library File concern the database file where the source programs and object modules contained in the library are to be stored.

Field	Explanation
DBID/FNR	The database ID and file number of the file. If no DBID/FNR are specified here, the DBID/FNR of the FUSER parameter as defined in the Natural parameter module/file apply (see the FUSER parameter in your Natural Reference documentation).
Password	This field only applies on mainframe computers, it has no effect under OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows 98/NT/2000. If the library file is password-protected, the Adabas password (for VSAM files, the VSAM DDname) must be entered in this field to enable Natural to access the file.
Cipher code	This field only applies on mainframe computers, it has no effect under OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows 98/NT/2000. If the library file is ciphered, the Adabas cipher code (for VSAM files, the VSAM password) must be entered in this field to enable Natural to access the file.
ETID (display only)	This field contains the library-specific component of the ID for End of Transaction data (for details on ETIDs, see Components of a User Profile in the section User Maintenance).

Note:

For the Natural system libraries - that is, all libraries whose IDs begin with "SYS" (except the library SYSTEM) - you cannot enter a DBID, FNR, password, or cipher code. For these libraries the DBID, FNR, password, and cipher code of the Natural profile parameter FNAT (described in the Natural Reference documentation) as defined in the Natural parameter module/file invariably apply.

Transactions

Field	Explanation
Startup	<p>You may enter the name of a startup transaction; this transaction will always be invoked immediately after a successful logon to the library. See also the Natural system variable *STARTUP in the Natural Reference documentation.</p> <p>The name of the startup transaction will be placed in the Natural system variable *STARTUP. If it is also executed in batch mode, its name will be only be placed into *STARTUP if "Batch execution" (see below) is set to "S".</p>
Batch execution	<p>This field only applies if the Natural system variable *DEVICE is set to "BATCH" (otherwise its value has no effect).</p> <p>You can specify one of the following values:</p> <p>Y The startup transaction mentioned above will also be executed (once) in batch mode.</p> <p>S The startup transaction mentioned above will also be executed in batch mode; in addition, its name will be placed in the system variable *STARTUP.</p> <p>N If the NEXT/MORE line is allowed for the library (see Security Options below), the startup transaction will not be executed in batch mode. If the NEXT/MORE line is not allowed, the startup transaction will also be executed (once) in batch mode.</p>
Restart	<p>You may enter the name of a restart transaction; this transaction will always be invoked when the library is reinvoked by entering "RESTART" as the library ID on the logon screen.</p>

Field	Explanation
Error	<p>You may enter the name of an error transaction; this transaction will be invoked after the occurrence of an execution time error (if the program does not contain an ON ERROR statement, or if it does contain an ON ERROR block which is not exited with a FETCH, STOP, TERMINATE or RETRY statement); if the Natural profile parameter SYNERR is "ON", the error transaction may also handle syntax errors.</p> <p>The following parameters will be passed from the program in error to the error transaction:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - error number (N4 if SG=OFF; N5 if SG=ON), - line number (N4), - status (A1), - program name (A8), - level (N2). <p>The error transaction must be able to read these parameters.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>INPUT (SG=OFF) #ERROR (N4) #LINE (N4) #STATUS(A1) #PGM (A8) #LEVEL (N2)</pre> <p>The field #ERROR contains the error number.</p> <p>The field #LINE contains the number of the line in which the error occurred. (If the #STATUS is either "C" or "L", the line number will be "0".)</p> <p>The field #STATUS contains one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> C = Command processing error. L = Logon error. R = error on Remote server (in conjunction with Natural RPC). O = Object time error. S = non-correctable Syntax error. <p>The field #PGM contains the name of the program in which the error occurred.</p> <p>The field #LEVEL corresponds with the Natural system variable *LEVEL. The #LEVEL parameter is only passed on if the Natural profile parameter SYNERR is set to "ON".</p> <p>Note: If no error transaction is specified, the program specified with the Natural profile parameter ETA (described in your Natural Reference documentation) will receive control when an error occurs. If an error occurs during an initial logon, the program specified with the ETA parameter will also receive control (for other logon errors, the error transaction specified in the library from which you log on to another library applies).</p> <p>A sample error transaction program "ERROR" is provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.</p>

User Exit

With each library profile and special link profile, you can store 250 bytes of additional data of your choice.

These additional data can be stored/read by means of a user exit subprogram which must contain a CALLNAT statement (with five parameters as described below) which in turn invokes one of the following subprograms:

- **SNAASEXT** - to store additional library data,
- **SNAAREXT** - to read additional library data,
- **SNAUSEXT** - to store additional special link data,
- **SNAUREXT** - to read additional special link data.

These four subprograms are contained in the Natural Security library "SYSSEC".

In the User Exit field of the library profile or special link profile, you enter the name of the user exit that invokes one of the above subprograms.

To invoke the user exit, you mark "User Exit" with "Y" in the Additional Options window (see below).

If you wish to handle the additional data from within a library, you can also invoke the above subprograms by means of a user exit from a library itself. In this case you must copy the subprograms into that library (by using the SYSMAIN utility).

When invoked from a library, each subprogram will check and ensure that only data concerning that library or the specified link are read/stored.

In the security profiles of the Natural system libraries, that is, all libraries whose IDs begin with "SYS" (except the library "SYSTEM"), you cannot specify a user exit.

SNAASEXT is used to store additional library data. It must be invoked with the following five parameters:

Parameter	Format/Length	Contents passed to SNAASEXT	Contents returned from SNAASEXT
1st	A8	none	Library ID
2nd	A32	none	Library name
3rd	D	none	Date of latest modification
4th	A250	Data to be stored	same as passed
5th	B2	none	Return code

SNAAREXT is used to read additional library data. It must be invoked with the following five parameters:

Parameter	Format/Length	Contents passed to SNAAREXT	Contents returned from SNAAREXT
1st	A8	none	Library ID
2nd	A32	none	Library name
3rd	D	none	Date of latest modification
4th	A250	none	Data read
5th	B2	none	Return code

When you invoke SNAAREXT or SNAASEXT from a library profile in SYSSEC, the data will refer to the library you are currently maintaining.

When you invoke SNAAREXT or SNAASEXT from outside SYSSEC, the data will refer to the library from which you invoke the subprogram.

SNAUSEXT is used to store additional special link data. It must be invoked with the following five parameters:

Parameter	Format/Length	Contents passed to SNAUSEXT	Contents returned from SNAUSEXT
1st	A8	none	Library ID
2nd	A8	User ID (must only be filled if SNAUSEXT is invoked from outside SYSSEC)	User ID
3rd	D	none	Date of latest modification
4th	A250	Data to be stored	same as passed
5th	B2	none	Return code

SNAUREXT is used to read additional special link data. It must be invoked with the following five parameters:

Parameter	Format/Length	Contents passed to SNAUREXT	Contents returned from SNAUREXT
1st	A8	none	Library ID
2nd	A8	User ID (must only be filled if SNAUREXT is invoked from outside SYSSEC)	User ID
3rd	D	none	Date of latest modification
4th	A250	none	Data read
5th	A2/B2	*	Return code*

* When you invoke SNAUREXT from outside SYSSEC, you may read several special links to the library by using the 2nd parameter as start value and specifying one of the following operators in the 5th parameter (A2): "EQ", "=", "GT", "> ", "LT", "< ", "GE", ">=", "LE", "<=". These operators determine the read condition as compared against the 2nd parameter.

Return code (B2) "0" indicates that the specified special link has been found; any other value indicates that no such link has been found.

When you invoke SNAUREXT or SNAUSEXT from a special link profile in SYSSEC, the data will refer to the link you are currently maintaining.

When you invoke SNAUREXT or SNAUSEXT from outside SYSSEC, the data will refer to the link between the specified user ID and the library from which you invoke the subprogram.

Additional Options

If you mark the field "Additional Options" on the basic security profile screen with "Y", a window will be displayed from which you can select the following options:

- Maintenance Information
- Security Notes
- Owners
- Mailboxes
- Time Windows
- Steplibs
- Restrictions
- Functional Security
- User Exit

The options for which something has already been specified or defined are marked with a plus sign (+).

You can select one or more items from the window by marking them with any character. For each item selected, an additional window/screen will be displayed (in the order of the items in the selection window).

The Restrictions window can also be invoked directly by pressing PF5 on the basic security profile screen.

The individual options are explained below.

Additional Option	Explanation
Maintenance Information (display only)	In this window, the following information is displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the date and time when the security profile was created, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who created it, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the creation; ● the date and time when the security profile was last modified, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who made the last modification, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the modification.
Security Notes	In this window, you may enter your notes on the security profile.
Owners	In this window, you may enter up to eight IDs of ADMINISTRATORS. Only the ADMINISTRATORS specified here will be allowed to maintain this security profile. If no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may maintain the library. For each owner, the number of co-owners whose countersignatures will be required for maintenance permission may optionally be specified in the field after the ID. For an explanation of owners and co-owners, see the section Countersignatures.
Mailboxes	In this window, you may enter up to five mailbox IDs. For information on mailboxes, see the section Mailboxes.
Time Windows	In this window, up to five time windows may be specified, outside of which the library cannot be used. For example, if a time window is set to "0815 - 1300", a user may log on to the library only between 08:15 h and 13:00 h; if a user is still logged on to the library at 13:00 h, the application contained in the library will automatically be terminated.

Additional Option	Explanation
Steplibs	<p>In this window, you may enter the names of the libraries which are to be the steplib libraries (concatenated libraries) for the library.</p> <p>Multiple steplibs allow you to make different modules available to different libraries and also restrict the general availability of modules without having to have multiple copies of the same module in multiple libraries; that is, each module has to exist only once, but you can nonetheless make it available to several libraries, but not to others.</p> <p>For example, the modules that are to be available to all libraries can be contained in a general steplib which is specified in all library profiles, while modules that are to be available only to some libraries can be contained in another steplib which is specified only in some library profiles.</p> <p>Moreover, by specifying different special links to a library (see Linking Users to Libraries in the section Protecting Libraries), you can allow different users of the same library the use of different steplibs.</p> <p>You can specify up to 8 steplibs, plus a value for the Natural system variable *STEPLIB: When an object is requested in the library but not found in it, the 8 steplibs are searched - in the order in which they are specified in the library profile - for that object. If the requested object cannot be found in any of the 8 steplibs, the *STEPLIB library will be searched for it. If it cannot be found in that library either, the library SYSTEM will be searched for it (without SYSTEM having to be specified as a steplib in a library profile). If no value is specified in any of the 8 steplib fields in the library profile, the 8 steplibs specified with the Natural profile parameter LSTEP will be used instead.</p> <p>If no value is assigned to *STEPLIB in the library profile, the *STEPLIB value of the Natural profile parameter LSTEP will be used instead.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <p>Owner logic applies to the specification of a steplib; that is, if owners are specified in a library profile (see above), only these owners will be allowed to enter the library as steplib in the profile of another library.</p> <p>For Natural system libraries (that is, libraries whose IDs begin with "SYS") - except library SYSTEM - you cannot specify a *STEPLIB library. For these libraries, an internal system steplib is used as *STEPLIB library.</p> <p>If you use the library SYSTEM as steplib only, SYSTEM itself need not be defined as a library to Natural Security.</p> <p>Next to each steplib name, you can enter a database ID (DBID), file number (FNR), password and cipher code in the steplib window of a library window.</p> <p>If you assign "99999" as DBID value for a steplib in the steplib window of a library profile, the DBID value specified in the library profile of the steplib will be used. The same applies to FNR, password and cipher code values.</p> <p>If you assign no DBID value (or "0") for a steplib in the steplib window of a library profile, the DBID value of that library will be used. The same applies to FNR, password and cipher code values.</p> <p>By marking a steplib name with the cursor and pressing PF5 in the steplib window of a library profile, you can copy the actual values of DBID, FNR, password and cipher code from the steplib profile into the steplib window.</p> <p>For the *STEPLIB library specified in a library profile, the DBID, FNR, password and cipher code values of that library profile apply.</p>

Additional Option	Explanation
Restrictions	<p>As part of the restrictions, you may define:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● security options ● security limits ● session parameters ● command restrictions ● editing restrictions ● statement restrictions ● allow/disallow modules ● set status of DDMs <p>These items are described below.</p>
Functional security	<p>In this window, you may define functional security for the command processors of the library. This is only relevant if command processors have been created with the Natural utility SYSNCP. See the section Functional Security for details.</p>
User exit	<p>If a user exit is specified in the Transactions column of the main library security profile screen, you can activate that user exit by marking this field.</p>

Security Options

If you mark "Security Options" in the Restrictions selection window with any character, the Security Options window will be displayed. In this window, you can set the following options:

Option	Explanation
Allow NEXT/MORE line	<p>Y - Allows the use of the Natural main menu.</p> <p>N - Suppresses the Natural main menu; when a user logs on to the library, the startup transaction specified for the library will be invoked instead (if no startup transaction is specified, the logon procedure will be invoked; see also the Natural system variable *STARTUP in the Natural Reference documentation).</p>
Allow system commands	<p>Y - Allows the use of Natural system commands in the library. To disallow individual commands, you use the Command Restrictions section of the library profile (see below).</p> <p>N - Disallows the use of all system commands in the library. (This does not affect the system commands FIN, LAST, LASTMSG, LOGOFF, LOGON, MAINMENU, RENUMBER, RETURN, SETUP and TECH; they can always be used.)</p>
Execution of update programs	<p>Y - Programs that update the database can be executed in the library.</p> <p>N - Programs that update the database cannot be executed in the library.</p>
Device	<p>If this field is left blank, use of the library will not be restricted to any operation mode or device.</p> <p>If you enter a value, use of the library will be restricted to one specific device or operation mode. Possible values are: ASYNCH, BATCH, BTX, COLOR, PC, TTY, VIDEO and WS-CON (according to the current values of the Natural system variable *DEVICE).</p>
Clear source area by logon	<p>N - The editor source work area will <i>not</i> be cleared when a user logs on from the library to another.</p> <p>Y - The work area of the editor will be cleared automatically when a user logs on from the library to another.</p>
PC download/PC upload	<p>Y - Modules contained in the library can be downloaded from the mainframe to a personal computer and uploaded from a personal computer to the mainframe respectively.</p> <p>N - Download and upload of modules will not be possible.</p> <p>This field only applies to mainframe computers; it has no effect under OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows 98/NT/2000.</p>
Close databases by logon	<p>Y - All databases that have been accessed during the current Natural session will be closed automatically when a user logs on from the library to another.</p> <p>N - No databases will be closed when a user logs on from the library to another.</p>

Security Limits

If you mark "Security Limits" in the Restrictions selection window with any character, the Security Limits window will be displayed. In this window, you can set the following limits:

Limit	Explanation
Non-activity logoff limit	The maximum time (in seconds) which may elapse after the last terminal communication. If this time is exceeded, a new logon procedure will be invoked as soon as the next input is received from the terminal.
Maximum transaction duration	<p>The maximum time (in seconds) permitted for a single Adabas transaction. This feature can be used to prevent the blockage of resources for an excessive time. If the time is exceeded, the current transaction will be backed out.</p> <p>The Natural system variable *TIME-OUT contains the time remaining before a time-out will occur. (The Adabas TT parameter (Adabas transaction time limit) will be checked separately).</p>
Maximum number of source lines	<p>The maximum number of source-code lines permitted for a user-written Natural program. If the line limit is exceeded, the Natural syntax checker will issue an appropriate error message.</p> <p>Possible values are 0 - 99999.</p>
Maximum amount of CPU time (MT)	<p>The maximum amount of CPU time (in seconds) to be used (as in the Natural profile parameter MT, described in the Natural Reference documentation).</p> <p>If you set this field to "0", the limit is determined by the value of the Natural profile parameter MT.</p> <p>If you wish the highest possible limit to be in effect, set this field to the maximum value.</p> <p>If you wish no limit to be in effect, set both this field and the MT parameter to "0".</p> <p>This field only applies to mainframe computers; it has no effect under OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows 98/NT/2000.</p>
Maximum number of Adabas calls (MADIO)	<p>The maximum number of Adabas calls permitted between two screen I/O operations (as in the Natural profile parameter MADIO, described in the Natural Reference documentation). If the number specified is exceeded, the Natural program will be interrupted and an appropriate error message displayed.</p> <p>If you set this field to "0", the limit is determined by the value of the Natural profile parameter MADIO.</p> <p>If you wish the highest possible limit to be in effect, set this field to the maximum value (32767).</p> <p>If you wish no limit to be in effect, set this field to "99999".</p>

Maximum number of program calls (MAXCL)	<p>The maximum number of program calls permitted between two screen I/O operations (as in the Natural profile parameter MAXCL, described in the Natural Reference documentation). If the number specified is exceeded, the Natural program will be interrupted and an appropriate error message displayed.</p> <p>A value of "0" indicates that the value of the Natural profile parameter MAXCL will be valid.</p> <p>If you wish the highest possible limit to be in effect, you must explicitly enter the maximum value (32767).</p> <p>If you wish no limit to be in effect, set this field to "99999".</p>
Processing loop limit (LT)	<p>The maximum number of records which may be read in any given processing loop of the library (as in the Natural profile parameter LT, described in the Natural Reference documentation).</p> <p>A value of "0" indicates that the value of the Natural profile parameter LT will be valid.</p> <p>If you wish the highest possible limit to be in effect, you must explicitly enter the maximum value.</p> <p>If you wish no limit to be in effect, set both this field and the LT parameter to "0".</p>

Session Parameters

If you mark "Session Parameters" in the Restrictions selection window with any character, the Session Parameters screen will be displayed.

On this screen, you may specify values for Natural session parameters, which will override the default parameter values set during Natural installation.

The parameters in the top left-hand block of the screen may take the following values. If a parameter is left blank, the corresponding default character will be valid.

Parameter	Possible Values
DC	Any character.
CF	Any special character, or "F" (for OFF).
CLEAR	Any character.
IA	Any special character.
IM	"F" (Forms mode) or "D" (Delimiter mode).
ID	Any special character.

The parameters in the the top right-hand block of the screen may take the following values. If a parameter is left blank, the corresponding default value will be valid.

Parameter	Possible Values
SA	"T" (true) or "F" (false).
DU	For mainframe computers: "O" (on), "N" (off) or "F" (force). For all other platforms: "O" (on) or "N" (off).
EJ	"T" (true) or "F" (false).
FS	"T" (true) or "F" (false).
WH	"T" (true) or "F" (false).
ZD	"T" (true) or "F" (false).

The parameters in the bottom right-hand block of the screen may take numeric values. If a parameter is left blank or specified as "0", the corresponding default value will be valid.

Parameter	Possible Values
LS	Numeric value.
PS	Numeric value.
SL	Numeric value.
SF	Numeric value.

For information on the individual session/profile parameters, see the Natural Reference documentation.

Moreover the screen provides the following fields:

Field	Explanation
Adabas open (OPRB)	<p>The contents of the record buffer used with the Adabas OPEN command may be entered. If so, a restricted OPEN will be executed, which means that only files included in the record buffer may be referenced. If no record buffer contents are specified, all accessible files may be referenced (see also the Adabas Command Reference documentation).</p> <p>If this field is set to "NOOPEN", no Adabas OPEN command will be executed.</p> <p>If this field is left blank, an OPRB parameter specified dynamically when invoking Natural applies for this library (see the Natural Reference documentation for details on the profile parameter OPRB).</p>
Spool profile	<p>The name of the spool profile may be entered (only applicable if Natural Advanced Facilities is installed; see the Natural Advanced Facilities documentation for details).</p>
Adabas password	<p>The Adabas password used for access to the Adabas data files (not system files) referenced by the library. This is only relevant if the corresponding files are password-protected under Adabas Security.</p> <p>The password specified in the security profile applies to all database access statements for which neither an individual password is specified nor a PASSW statement applies. It applies within the library in whose security profile it is specified, and also remains in effect in other libraries you subsequently log on to and in whose security profiles no password is specified. See also the PASSW statement in the Natural Statements documentation.</p>

Natural RPC Restrictions

When you press PF8 on the Session Parameters screen, another screen will be displayed in which you can set various restrictions that apply when subprograms contained in the library are executed by means of Natural RPC in a client/server environment.

These restrictions are only relevant for library security profiles defined on the client.

Field	Explanation
Expiration Criteria	<p>The following criteria determine how often / how long subprograms in the library can be executed by means of Natural RPC.</p> <p>When one of the criteria is reached, the criteria can either be reset by means of the user exit USR1071 or by the user newly logging on to the library.</p>
Use Count	Determines how many times remote subprograms can be executed.
Number of Days	<p>Determines for how many days remote subprograms can be executed.</p> <p>The days are counted beginning with the logon to the library.</p>
Number of Hours/Minutes	<p>Determines for how many hours/minutes remote subprograms can be executed.</p> <p>The time is counted beginning with the logon to the library.</p>
Allow Overwriting by User Exit USR1071	<p>Y - The above expiration criteria in the library security profile, as well as the user ID and password from the client logon procedure, can be overwritten by criteria specified with user exit USR1071.</p> <p>N - No data can be set/overwritten by user exit USR1071.</p>
Close All Databases	<p>This option allows you to control the logon-/logoff-dependent closing of databases. It affects all databases which have been opened by remote subprograms contained in the library:</p> <p>N - The databases are <i>not</i> closed when a logon/logoff to/from the library is performed.</p> <p>Y - The databases are closed when a <i>logon</i> to the library is performed.</p> <p>F - The databases are closed when a <i>logon</i> to the library is performed, and when a <i>logoff</i> from the library is performed.</p> <p>This option is only relevant if the option LOGONRQ=ON is set in the Natural profile parameter RPC or NTRPC macro. If you wish to have one user-queue element per client session for each database accessed by the RPC server, it is recommended that you set LOGONRQ=ON and "Close All Databases" to "Y" or "F".</p>
Logon Option	<p>This option determines which logon data are evaluated when the library is accessed by the RPC server:</p> <p>N - Library ID, user ID and password are evaluated.</p> <p>A - Only library ID and user ID are evaluated (similar to the Natural profile parameter AUTO=ON, but for this library only).</p>

User exit USR1071 is contained in library SYSEXT. For further information on Natural RPC with Natural Security, see your Natural Remote Procedure Call documentation.

Command Restrictions

If you mark "Command Restrictions" in the Restrictions selection window with any character, the Command Restrictions screen will be displayed. On this screen, you may allow or disallow the use of individual Natural system commands.

By default, all commands shown on the Command Restrictions screen are marked with "Y", which means that all commands are allowed.

- Mark with "Y" each command you wish to be available for use in the library.
- Mark with "N" each command you wish *not* to be used in the library.

For information on the individual Natural system commands, see your Natural User's Guide.

Those commands which are displayed intensified on the Command Restrictions screen use the Natural syntax checker and consequently Natural statements (which may also be allowed/disallowed individually; see Statement Restrictions below).

Editing Restrictions

If you mark "Editing Restrictions" in the Restrictions selection window with any character, the Editing Restrictions window will be displayed. In this window, you may allow or disallow the editing of Natural objects of certain object types.

By default, all object types shown in the Editing Restrictions window are marked with "Y", which means that objects of all types may be edited.

- Mark with "Y" each type of object whose editing you wish to be allowed in the library.
- Mark with "N" each type of object whose editing you wish *not* to be allowed in the library.

For information on Natural object types, see the Natural Programming Guide; for information on the Natural editors, see your Natural User's Guide.

To disallow editing altogether, you may disallow the use of the EDIT command (see Command Restrictions above). When you disallow the EDIT command, all object types in the Editing Restrictions window are automatically marked with "N". When you allow the EDIT command again, all object types in the Editing Restrictions window are automatically marked with "Y" again.

Statement Restrictions

If you mark "Statement Restrictions" in the Restrictions selection window with any character, the Statement Restrictions screen will be displayed. On this and the next screen, you may allow or disallow the use of individual Natural statements. To get from this screen to the next and back again, you press PF7 and PF8 respectively.

By default, all statements shown on the Statement Restrictions screen are marked with "Y", which means that all statements are allowed.

- Mark with "Y" the Natural statements you wish to be allowed for use in the library.
- Mark with "N" the Natural statements you do *not* wish to be used in the library.

For the FIND statement and other database access statements, you may also allow/disallow individual clauses.

Any Natural statement which is not listed on the Statements Restrictions screen is always allowed (for example, the statement END).

Disallow/Allow Modules

In the Restrictions selection window, besides the field you mark to select "Disallow/Allow Modules", there is a second field, in which you can enter one of the following:

X	This causes all modules to be allowed; individual modules cannot be disallowed (the Disallow/Allow Modules screen will not be invoked). If you enter an "X", do not at the same time mark the selection field.
D	All modules are initially allowed, and you may disallow individual modules.
A	All modules are initially disallowed, and you may allow individual modules.

Note:

For the Display function, you can only mark the selection field; regardless of the setting of the second field, the Disallow/Allow Modules screen will be displayed showing the list of allowed/disallowed modules.

If you mark "Disallow/Allow Modules" in the Restrictions selection window with any character and enter a "D" or "A" in the second field, the Disallow Modules screen or Allow Modules screen respectively will be displayed:

```

11:13:46                *** Natural Security ***                1999-08-13
                        - Disallow Modules -
Library  TESTLIB                0 Module names not held in user buffer
Module   T Status                    Mark  Module  T Status                    Mark
-----
#ABANDON P ALLOWED                _    #UAFLAG1 P ALLOWED                _
#ATRAIL  P ALLOWED                _    #UAFLAG2 P ALLOWED                _
#BOC     P ALLOWED                _    #UAFLX   P ALLOWED                _
#DAWG    P ALLOWED                _    #UB       P ALLOWED                _
#KEY1    P ALLOWED                _    #UBFLAG  P ALLOWED                _
#KEY2    P ALLOWED                _    #UBFLAGB P ALLOWED                _
#MEDUSA  P ALLOWED                _    AMAIL    P ALLOWED                _
#NEMESIS P ALLOWED                _    APROFILE P ALLOWED                _
#PWINDOW P ALLOWED                _    CALDANDO N ALLOWED                _
#TFECH01 P ALLOWED                _    HOTTA    M ALLOWED                _
***** Module Names held in User Buffer *****
_____
_____
-----
Reposition to .. _____ Display module names not held in UB .. _

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp Restr Flip  -   +   Free  Stepl   Canc
    
```

Column "T" on the Disallow/Allow Modules screen indicates the object types of the modules:

P	Program
N	Subprogram
S	Subroutine
H	Helproutine
G	Global data area
L	Local data area
A	Parameter data area
M	Map
C	Copycode
3	Dialog
4	Class

On the Disallow/Allow Modules screen, mark with a "D" the modules contained in the library you wish to be disallowed; mark with an "A" the modules contained in the library you wish to be allowed. The first ten module names marked will be held in the user buffer.

In addition, the following subfunctions are available:

<p>Module Names Held in User Buffer</p>	<p>If you wish modules to be disallowed/allowed and their names to be held in the user buffer, type in their names into the ten fields provided on the Disallow/Allow Modules screen.</p> <p>If you type in a value followed by an asterisk (*), all module names beginning with that value will be disallowed/allowed and held in the user buffer.</p> <p>Those disallowed/allowed module names not held in the user buffer may be displayed by marking the "Display module names not held in User Buffer" field with any character. Unmark it to return to the Disallow/Allow Modules screen.</p> <p>If possible, the number of allowed/disallowed modules should not exceed 10; that is, all allowed/disallowed module names should be held in the user buffer; module names not held in the user buffer will cause a reduction in performance, as the Natural Security data file will have to be additionally accessed to check whether a module whose name is not held in the user buffer is allowed or not.</p>
<p>Allowing/Disallowing "Non-Existent" Modules (PF9)</p>	<p>The Disallow/Allow Modules screen of a library profile displays a list of all modules contained in the corresponding library. However, there may be modules which currently are not physically available (for example, because the corresponding database is not active, or the modules have not yet been written), and which would therefore not appear in the list of modules. Or in a heterogeneous production environment using a central mainframe FUSER system file, the library may exist not on the mainframe FUSER system file but in the file system on another platform. If you were to define a library profile for such a library, Natural Security on the mainframe computer would not know of that library, and the list of modules would therefore be empty.</p> <p>To enable you to disallow/allow such "non-existent" modules, the Allow/Disallow Modules function provides the subfunction "Free List of Modules". With this subfunction, you can predefine modules which are not physically present on the current FUSER system file.</p> <p>To invoke the subfunction, you press PF9 on the Disallow/Allow Modules screen. The "Free List of Modules" window will be displayed. In this window, you manually enter the names of modules and allow/disallow them.</p>
<p>Steplibs (PF10)</p>	<p>This function does not apply on mainframe computers.</p> <p>With this subfunction, you can disallow/allow modules in the library's steplibs.</p> <p>To invoke the subfunction, you press PF10 on the Disallow/Allow Modules screen. A list of all the library's steplibs will be displayed. On the list, you select the library whose modules you wish to disallow/allow. Then, the list of modules contained in the selected steplib will be displayed, which you can then disallow/allow individually.</p> <p>When you disallow/allow modules in a steplib in this way, this does not mean you actually disallow/allow these modules in the library profile of the steplib. The steplib modules are only disallowed/allowed with respect to usage by the library whose profile you are currently maintaining (that is, the library from within whose library profile you have invoked the subfunction).</p>

Set Status of DDMs

This option only applies if the general option "Transition Period Logon" (see the section Administrator Services) is set to "N". It only affects DDMs for which no security profiles have been defined.

With this option, you can set the status of all new DDMs to PUBLIC. On mainframes, this applies to the file status; on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows, this applies to both the internal and the external status of DDMs.

In the Restrictions window, you can specify one of the following values for this option:

UNDF	The status of all DDMs without security profiles is undefined.
PUBL	The status of all DDMs without security profiles is PUBLIC.

By default, this option is set to "UNDF", which means that DDMs for which no security profiles have been defined cannot be used.

If you set this option to "PUBL", the status of all DDMs for which no security profiles have been defined is assumed to be PUBLIC, which means that these DDMs can be used. This allows you to use these DDMs without having to define security profiles for them.

For further information, see the sections Protecting DDMs On Mainframes and Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows.

Adding a New Library

The Add Library function is used to define new libraries to Natural Security, that is, create library security profiles.

Note:

To create library security profiles for *system libraries* (that is, libraries whose names begin with "SYS") more easily, you can use the Administrator Services function "Definition of system libraries", which provides predefined security profiles for most system libraries.

To add a new library security profile, enter the command ADD in the command line of the Library Maintenance selection list.

A window will appear. In this window, you enter a library ID.

The Add Library screen will be displayed. On this screen, you may define a security profile for the library.

The Add Library screen and the subsequent screens/windows that may be part of a library security profile as well as the individual items you may define are described under Components of a Library Profile above.

When you add a new library, the owners specified in your own user security profile will automatically be copied into the library security profile you are creating.

Library ID

Library IDs are used by Natural Security to identify libraries and their security profiles.

A library ID may be 1 to 8 characters long, it must start with an upper-case alphabetical character, and it must be unique amongst all library IDs and user IDs defined to Natural Security. A library ID must not contain blanks. It may consist of the following characters: upper-case alphabetical characters, numeric characters, hyphen (-) and underscore (_).

Before you start defining libraries, it may be advisable to conceive a logical system of creating library IDs that are related to the library names, as this will help you to identify libraries more easily when maintaining Natural Security.

Selecting Existing Libraries for Processing

When you invoke the Library Maintenance subsystem, a list of all libraries that have been defined to Natural Security will be displayed.

If you do not wish to get a list of all existing libraries but would like only certain libraries to be listed, you may use the Start Value and Type/Status options as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance". A window will be displayed. In the window, mark object type "Library" with a character or with the cursor (and, if desired, type in a start value and/or protection status). The Library Maintenance selection list will be displayed:

Co	Library ID	Library Name	Prot.	Message
___	KETEST		YN	
___	KEX	TEST APPL-KE	YN	
___	KE1	KETEST	NN	
___	KJH		NN	
___	KK-APPL		NN	
___	KKAPP		NN	
___	KKAPPC		NN	
___	KKAPP1		NN	
___	KKAPP2		NN	
___	KKAPP3		NN	
___	KKAPP4		YN	
___	KKAPP7		NN	
___	KKITEST		NN	
___	KKPAC		NN	
___	KKPROD		NN	

Command ==>

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---

Help Exit Flip - + Canc

For each library, the ID, name and protection status are displayed.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

The following library maintenance functions are available (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
<u>CO</u>	Copy library
<u>MO</u>	Modify library
RE	Rename library
DE	Delete library
<u>DI</u>	Display library
LU	Link users to library
LF	Link library to files (this function is only available on mainframe computers)
MD	Modify DDM restrictions in library (this function is only available on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows)

To invoke a function for a library, mark the library with the appropriate function code in column "Co".

You may select various libraries for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several libraries on the screen with a function code. For each library marked, the appropriate processing screen will be displayed. You may then perform for one library after another the selected functions.

Copying a Library

The Copy Library function is used to define a new library to Natural Security by creating a security profile which is identical to an existing library security profile.

What is Copied?

The existing security profile will be duplicated - except the owners (these will be copied from your own user security profile into the new library security profile you are creating).

Any *links* existing to or from the existing library will *not* be copied.

How to Copy

On the Library Maintenance selection list, mark the library whose security profile you wish to duplicate with function code "CO".

A window will be displayed. In this window, enter the ID of the new library.

The new security profile will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile you may define or modify are described under Components of a Library Profile above.

Modifying a Library

The Modify Library function is used to change an existing library security profile.

On the Library Maintenance selection list, you mark the library whose security profile you wish to change with function code "MO". The security profile of the selected library will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile you may define or modify are described under Components of a Library Profile above.

Renaming a Library

The Rename Library function allows you to change the library ID of an existing library security profile.

On the Library Maintenance selection list, you mark the library whose ID you wish to change with function code "RE". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a new ID for the library (and, optionally, change its name).

Depending on the setting of the general option "Deletion of non-empty libraries allowed" (as explained in in the section "Administrator Services"), it may not be possible to rename a library security profile if the library contains any sources or object modules.

Deleting a Library

The Delete Library function is used to delete an existing library security profile.

On the Library Maintenance selection list, you mark the library you wish to delete with function code "DE". A window will be displayed.

- If you have invoked the Delete Library function and should then decide against deleting the given library security profile, you may leave the Delete Library window by pressing ENTER without having typed in anything.
- If you wish to delete the given library security profile, enter the library's ID in the window to confirm the deletion.

When you delete a library, all existing links to the library will also be deleted.

Depending on the setting of the general option "Deletion of non-empty libraries allowed" (as explained in the section Administrator Services), it may not be possible to delete a library security profile if the library still contains any sources or object modules.

If you mark more than one library with "DE", a window will appear in which you are asked whether you wish to confirm the deletion of each library security profile by entering the library's ID, or whether all libraries selected for deletion are to be deleted without this individual confirmation. Be careful not to delete a library accidentally.

Displaying a Library

The Display Library function is used to display an existing library security profile.

On the Library Maintenance selection list, you mark the library whose security profile you wish to view with function code "DI". The security profile of the selected library will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile are described under Components of a Library Profile above.

Protecting Libraries

This section describes how to control the access of users to protected libraries. It covers the following topics:

- Protected Libraries
- Linking Users to Libraries
- Which Conditions of Use are in Effect?

Protected Libraries

A library may be protected by specifying the values of "People-protected" and "Terminal-protected" in the "General Options" column of the library's security profile.

Protection Combinations

The possible combinations of "People-protected" and "Terminal-protected" are listed below:

Protection	Explanation
People: N Terminal: N	The library is not protected. It may be used by any person from any terminal. The terminal need not be defined to Natural Security. The user must be defined to Natural Security. The user ID must be entered on the logon screen in order to be able to log on to the library.
People: Y Terminal: N	The library may be used only by persons who are linked to the library or are in a group that is linked to the library. It may be used from any terminal. The terminal need not be defined to Natural Security. The user (and the group if need be) must be defined to Natural Security. The user ID must be entered on the logon screen in order to be able to log on to the library.
People: N Terminal: Y	The library may be used by any person, but it may only be used from a terminal which is defined to Natural Security and is contained in a group which is linked to the library. No user ID is required on the logon screen to log on to the library.
People: Y Terminal: Y	The library may be used either by people linked to the library or from a terminal which is contained in a group which is linked to the library. In other words, by entering his or her user ID on the logon screen, a linked person may use the library from any terminal; people who are not linked to the library may only use the library from a linked terminal.
People: Y Terminal: A	The library may be used only by people from linked terminals: The person must be defined to Natural Security and must be in a group which is linked to the library (or may be linked directly, if user type "A" or "P"); the terminal must also be defined to Natural Security, and it must be contained in a group which is linked to the library. The user ID and library ID must be entered on the logon screen in order to be able to log on to the library.
People: N Terminal: A	This combination is not possible!

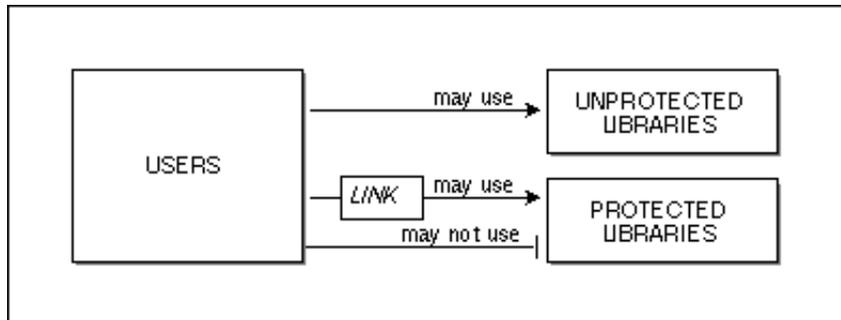
Changing a Protection Combination

Please take care when you alter an existing combination of "People-protected" and "Terminal-protected". If the alteration results in a "lower" protection level, certain links will automatically be cancelled by Natural Security according to the following rules:

Change from	to	Effect on Links
any protection combination	People: N Terminal: N	All existing links to the library will be cancelled.
any protection combination	People: N Terminal: Y	All direct links of ADMINISTRATORS and PERSONs will be cancelled; links of GROUPs to the library will remain.
any protection combination	People: Y Terminal: N	No links will be cancelled.
any protection combination	People: Y Terminal: Y	No links will be cancelled.
People: N Terminal: Y	People: Y Terminal: Y	No links will be cancelled. However, all people contained in GROUPs which are linked to the library may now also log on the library!

Linking Users to Libraries

To allow a user access to a protected library, a *link* has to be established between the user and the library.



Only users of types ADMINISTRATOR, PERSON, and GROUP can be linked to a library.

Users of types ADMINISTRATOR and PERSON can be linked to a library either directly or via a GROUP.

Users of types MEMBER and TERMINAL can be linked to a library only via a GROUP; that is, they must be assigned to a GROUP, and the GROUP be linked to the library.

There are two functions available to establish and maintain links between users and libraries:

- To link *one user* to *various libraries*, you use the function "Link user to libraries" (which is invoked from the User Maintenance selection list).
- To link *various users* to *one library*, you use the function "Link users to library" (which is invoked from the Library Maintenance selection list).

Both functions are described below.

Linking a Single User to Libraries

The function "Link user to libraries" is used to link one user to one or more libraries.

On the User Maintenance selection list, you mark the user you wish to link with function code "LL".

A window will be displayed in which you can enter a Start Value (as described in the section Finding Your Way in Natural Security) for the list of libraries to be displayed. Then, the Link User To Libraries selection list will be displayed, showing the list of libraries.

The list includes all protected libraries; that is, if you link a user of type PERSON or ADMINISTRATOR, the list includes all libraries with "People-protected" set to "Y"; if you link a user of type GROUP, the list includes all libraries with at least one of the two protection values set to "Y".

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way in Natural Security.

On the list, you mark the libraries to which you wish to link the given user.

In the "Co" column, you may mark each library with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined>):

Code	Function
LK	Link - The user may use the library with the security profile of the library being in effect.
SL	Special Link - The user may use the library with a special security profile to be defined for the link; the link profile will take precedence over the library profile. For details on special links, see Special Links below.
CL	Cancel - An existing link or special link will be cancelled.
TL	Temporarily locked - An existing link or special link will be suspended until it is re-established. A suspended link or special link can be re-established by marking the library concerned with "LK" or "SL" again. When a special link is re-established, the original link security profile will be re-established, too.
DL	Display special link - The security profile of an existing special link between the user and the library will be displayed.
DI	Display library - The security profile of the library will be displayed.
LD	Modify DDM restrictions in special link profile (This function is not available on mainframe computers. It corresponds to function "MD" as described under Creating And Maintaining DDM Profiles in the section Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows").

You can mark one or more libraries on the screen with a function code. For each library marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect for each library.

Linking Multiple Users to a Library

The function "Link user to libraries" is used to link one or more users to one library.

On the Library Maintenance selection list, you mark the library to which you wish to link users with code "LU".

A window will be displayed in which you can enter a Start Value (as described in the section Finding Your Way in Natural Security) for the list of users to be displayed. Then, the Link Users To Library selection list will be displayed, showing the list of users.

The list includes all users of types GROUP, ADMINISTRATOR, and PERSON.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way in Natural Security.

On the list, you mark the users you wish to be linked to the given library.

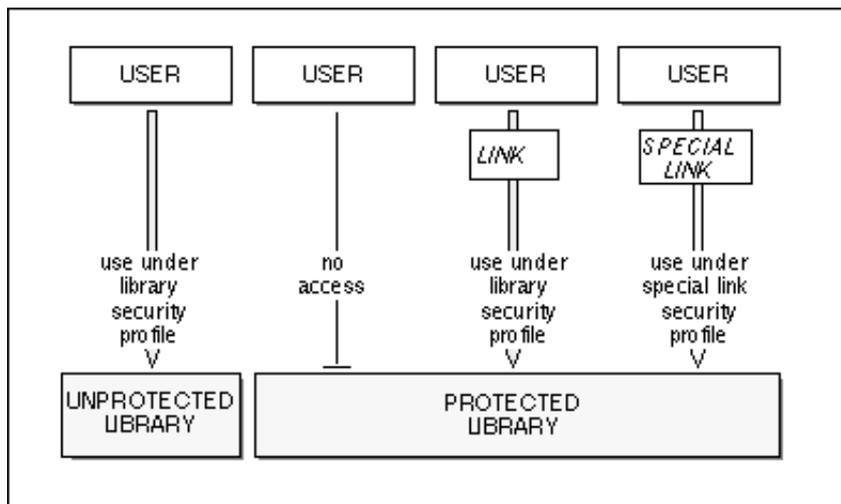
In the "Co" column, you may mark each user with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined>):

Code	Function
LK	Link - The user may use the library with the security profile defined for the library being in effect.
SL	Special Link - The user may use the library with a special security profile to be defined for the link; the link profile will take precedence over the library profile. For details on special links, see Special Links below.
CL	Cancel - An existing link or special link will be cancelled.
TL	Temporarily locked - An existing link or special link will be suspended until it is re-established. A suspended link or special link can be re-established by marking the user concerned with "LK" or "SL" again. When a special link is re-established, the original link security profile will be re-established, too.
DL	Display special link - The security profile of an existing special link between the user and the library will be displayed.
DI	Display user - The security profile of the user will be displayed.
LD	Modify DDM restrictions in special link profile (This function is not available on mainframe computers. It corresponds to function "MD" as described under Creating And Maintaining DDM Profiles in the section Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows).

You can mark one or more users on the screen with a function code. For each user marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect for each user.

Special Links

If a library security profile determines the conditions under which the library may be used generally, the special link security profile determines the conditions under which the user (or group of users) thus linked may use the library. This means that by using special links you may define for different users different conditions of use of the same library.



Creating a Special Link

If you mark a user/library with "SL", you may define the security profile for this Special Link on the screens which will be displayed. The default settings which will appear on the Special Link security profile screens are taken from the security profile of the library.

The items you may define as part of a Special Link security profile correspond with the items you may define as part of a library security profile (see Components of a Library Profile in the section Library Maintenance).

Modifying a Special Link

To modify an existing Special Link security profile, mark the respective user/library with "SL" again on the Link Users To Library or Link User To Libraries screen: the Special Link security profile screen will then be invoked for modification.

Displaying a Special Link

To view the security profile of a Special Link, mark the respective user/library with "DL" on the Link Users To Library or Link User To Libraries screen: the Special Link security profile screen will then be displayed.

Which Conditions of Use are in Effect?

When a user logs on to a protected library, Natural Security will execute a number of checks to determine under which conditions the user may use the library. If none of the checks are positive, the logon will be rejected.

The following checks will be executed in the following order:

Library Protection	Checks Performed
1. People: Y Terminal: N	1) Check whether the user is linked directly to the library; if the user is linked with a special link, the conditions defined in the special link security profile will be in effect; if the user is linked with an ordinary link, the conditions defined in the library security profile will be in effect. 2) Check whether the user is in a group which is linked to the library; if the user is contained in more than one group, these groups will be checked in the following order: first the "privileged groups" in the user's security profile will be checked in order of entry, then the other groups will be checked in alphabetical order; the first linked group found will be selected; if the group is linked with a special link, the conditions defined in the special link security profile will be in effect; if the group is linked with an ordinary link, the conditions defined in the library security profile will be in effect.
2. People: N Terminal: Y	Check whether the terminal is in a group which is linked to the library; if the terminal is contained in more than one group, these groups will be checked in the following order: first the "privileged groups" in the terminal's security profile will be checked in order of entry, then the other groups will be checked in alphabetical order; the first linked group found will be selected; if that group is linked with a special link, the conditions defined in the special link security profile will be in effect; if that group is linked with an ordinary link, the conditions defined in the library security profiles will be in effect.
3. People: Y Terminal: Y	If the user logs on <i>with a user ID</i> , the same checks as under 1. will be executed. If the user logs on <i>without specifying a user ID</i> , the same checks as under 2. will be executed.
4. People: Y Terminal: A	The same checks as under 1. will be executed.

Note:

The terminal must be in a group which is linked to the library, but the conditions of use are determined by the user's link.

PROFILE Command

When a user is logged on to a library, he/she may enter the Natural system command PROFILE to ascertain which conditions of use are currently in effect.

When you enter the PROFILE command, the Security Profile screen is displayed, providing the following information:

User	
ID	The user's ID.
Name	The user's name.
Type	The user type.
Link ID	The current value of the Natural system variable *GROUP. An asterisk (*) next to the ID indicates that the group's/user's link to the current library is a Special Link.
ETID	The current value of the Natural system variable *ETID.
Library	
ID	The ID of the current library.
Name	The name of the current library.
Steplibs	The steplibs of the current library.
Transactions	
Startup	The current value of the Natural system variable *STARTUP.
Restart	The name of the restart transaction.
Error	The current value of the Natural system variable *ERROR-TA.

Additional Options

If you mark the field "Additional Options" on Security Profile screen with "Y" or press PF4, a window will be displayed from which you can select the following items of information:

- Security options
- Security limits
- Session parameters
- Command restrictions
- Editing restrictions
- Statement restrictions
- Time windows
- System files
- Natural version

The options where something is defined for the current user are marked with a plus sign (+).

You can select one or more items from the window by marking them with any character. For each item selected, an additional window/screen will be displayed (in the order of the items in the selection window).

Utility Access Rights

If you press PF5, the NSC Utility Access Rights window will be displayed, providing an overview of the utility functions which you are allowed to use in each library.

- If you have issued the PROFILE command from within a utility, the window lists the functions available in that utility.
- If you have issued the PROFILE command elsewhere, the window lists all utilities along with information on whether some or all functions of a utility are allowed/disallowed for a specific library. (The notation <others> in the Library field of the window indicates all libraries for which nothing specific has been defined.)

To obtain more detailed information on the utility functions allowed for a particular library, you can select one or more libraries from the window by marking them with any character.

Protecting DDMs On Mainframes

As explained in the section Natural Security On Different Platforms, the protection of DDMs with Natural Security is different on mainframe computers from that on other platforms. This section describes how to control the use of DDMs (files) on *mainframe computers*. The control of DDMs on other platforms is described in the section Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX And Windows.

This section covers the following topics:

- Before You Begin
- Invoking File Maintenance
- Components of a File Profile
- Selecting a File or DDM for Processing
- Add File
- Copy File
- Modify File
- Delete File
- Display File
- Linking Libraries to Files

In Natural Security on mainframe computers, DDMs are called "files". To define DDMs to Natural Security, you use the File Maintenance functions of Natural Security.

Before You Begin

A DDM must have been generated (in Predict, or with the Natural utility SYSDDM), before it can be defined as a file to Natural Security.

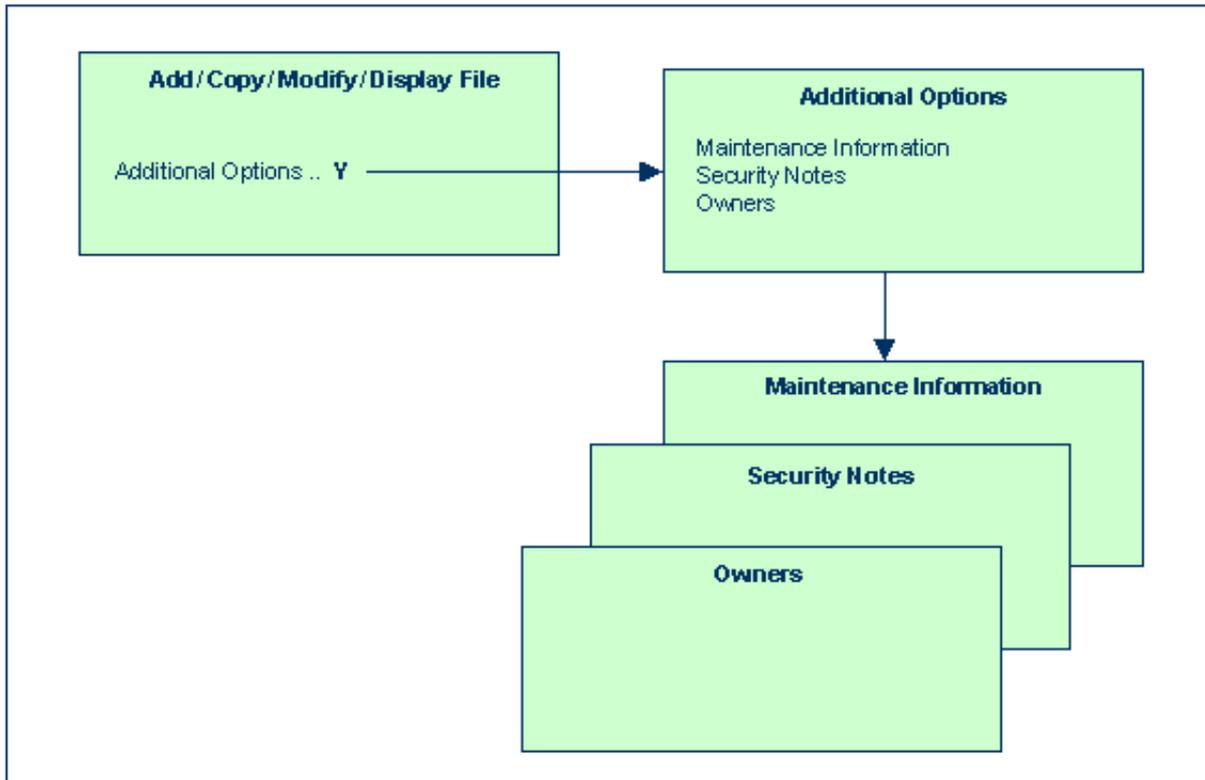
Invoking File Maintenance

On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance". A window will be displayed.

In the window, mark the object type "File" with a character or with the cursor. The File Maintenance selection list will be displayed.

From this selection list, you invoke all file maintenance functions as described in the appropriate sections of this section.

Components of a File Profile



The following type of screen is the "basic" file security profile screen, which appears when you invoke one of the functions Add, Copy, Modify, Display for a file security profile:

```

10:25:36                *** Natural Security ***                1999-10-01
                        - Modify File -

File ID .. EMPLOYEES                Modified .. 1999-07-13 by SAG
DBID .....    10
FNR .....    16
Status ... PUBL (PUBL, ACCE, PRIV)

-- DDM Modifiers --
_____ -
_____ -
_____ -
_____ -
_____ -
_____ -
_____ -
_____ -

Additional Options ... N

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp          Flip                                Canc
    
```

The individual items you may define as part of a file security profile are explained below.

Field	Explanation
File ID (display only)	<p>The ID by which the file is defined to Natural Security and for which a DDM exists in the Natural system file.</p> <p>The file ID by which a file is defined to Natural Security must be identical to that of the DDM. A file ID may be up to 32 characters long and must be unique among all file IDs defined to Natural Security.</p>
DBID / FNR (display only)	<p>The database ID and file number of the database file referenced by the DDM. These values are taken from the DDM and written into the security profile.</p>
Status	<p>You may set the file status to one of the following:</p> <p>PUBL Public (not protected)</p> <p>ACCE Access (update-protected)</p> <p>PRIV Private (read- and update-protected)</p> <p>When you create a file security profile, the file status will, by default, be set to "PUBL". See File Status below for details.</p>
DDM Modifiers	<p>You may enter up to eight IDs of users; only these users will then be allowed to maintain the DDM in Predict (or with Natural's SYSDDM utility). If you do not specify any DDM modifier, the owners of the security profile (see Additional Options below) may maintain the DDM. If neither DDM modifiers nor owners are specified, maintenance of the DDM is not restricted.</p> <p>Next to the ID of each DDM modifier, you may optionally specify a number from 1 to 3; this number determines how many of the other DDM modifiers specified must countersign for maintenance permission (the countersignature logic which applies to DDM maintenance permission is analogous to that of owners and co-owners as described in the section Countersignatures).</p>

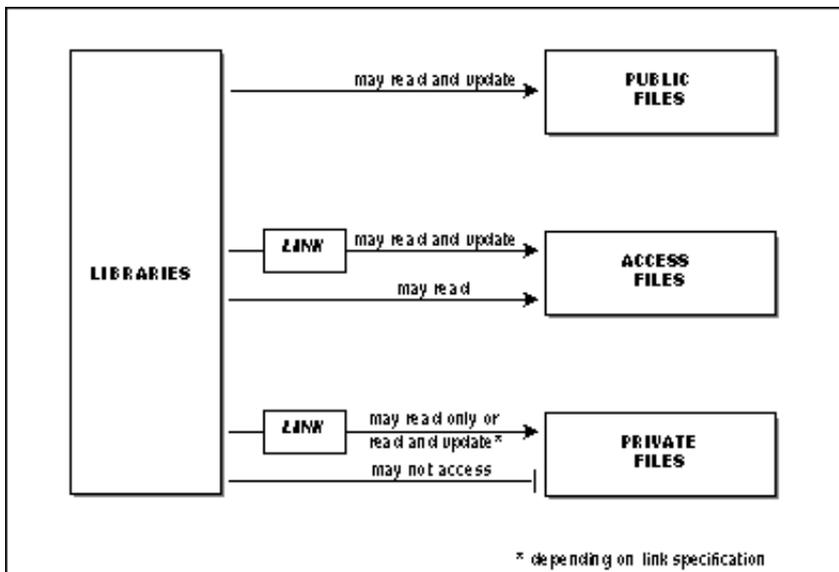
File Status

The file status of a file may be one of the following:

PUBL	PUBLIC: The file is <i>not</i> protected. It may be read and updated by any library.
ACCE	ACCESS: The file is protected as far as update is concerned. It may be read by any library. However, it may be updated only by libraries that have been linked to the file.
PRIV	PRIVATE: The file is protected. It may be accessed only by libraries that are linked to it. A link to a PRIVATE file may be specified as "read" (that is, read only) or "update" (which implies read).

The check whether a program may use a file is done when the program is *compiled*.

The following diagram illustrates the possible relationships between libraries and files in dependence of the file type:



To allow a library access to a file with status PRIVATE or ACCESS, a *link* has to be established between the library and the file. For information on how to link libraries to files, see Linking Libraries to Files below.

Additional Options

If you mark the field "Additional Options" on the basic security profile screen with "Y", a window will be displayed from which you can select the following options:

- Maintenance Information
- Security Notes
- Owners

The options for which something has already been specified or defined are marked with a plus sign (+).

You can select one or more items from the window by marking them with any character. For each item selected, an additional window will be displayed:

Additional Option	Explanation
Maintenance Information (display only)	In this window, the following information is displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the date and time when the security profile was created, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who created it, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the creation; ● the date and time when the security profile was last modified, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who made the last modification, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the modification.
Security Notes	In this window, you may enter your notes on the security profile.
Owners	In this window, you may enter up to eight IDs of ADMINISTRATORS. Only the ADMINISTRATORS specified here will be allowed to maintain this file security profile or link libraries to it. If no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may maintain and link the security profile. For each owner, the number of co-owners whose countersignatures will be required for maintenance/link permission may optionally be specified in the field after the ID. For an explanation of owners and co-owners, see the section Countersignatures.

Selecting a File or DDM for Processing

When you invoke the File Maintenance subsystem, a list of all files that have been defined to Natural Security will be displayed.

If you do not wish to get a list of all existing files but would like only certain files to be listed, you may use the Start Value and Type/Status options as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the Main Menu, enter the code "M" for "Maintenance". A window will be displayed. In the window, mark the object type "File" with a character or with the cursor (and, if desired, type in a start value and/or file status). The File Maintenance selection list will be displayed:

```

12:50:20                *** Natural Security ***                1999-10-01
                        - File Maintenance -

Co File ID                Status Message
---
___ ARTICLE                PUBL
___ AUTOMOBILES            PUBL
___ CUSTOMER                PUBL
___ EMPLOYEES                PUBL
___ FAHRZEUGE                PRIV
___ FINANCE                PUBL
___ FINANCE-VS              PUBL
___ INVOICE                PUBL
___ INVOICE-LINE            PUBL
___ MITARBEITER            PUBL
___ NEWDIC-DESC              PUBL
___ NEWDIC-EL                PUBL
___ NEWDIC-FI                PUBL
___ NEWDIC-PR                PUBL
___ NEWSEC                  PUBL

Command ==>
Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help      Exit      Flip -      +      Cancell
    
```

For each file, the file ID and file status are displayed.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

Status as Selection Criterion

If you wish to list only DDMs of a specific status, you can specify one of the following selection criteria in the Status field above the list:

PUBL	All DDMs of status PUBLIC.
ACCE	All DDMs of status ACCESS.
PRIV	All DDMs of status PRIVATE.
DEFI	Defined; that is, all DDMs of status PRIV, ACCE, and PUBL (*).
UNDF	Undefined; that is, all DDMs whose status is not PRIV, ACCE or PUBL (*).
DDM	All defined and undefined DDMs (*).
NDDM	DDM security profiles for which no corresponding DDMs exist (*).

* This is not an actual DDM status, but for selection purposes only.

The default status for selection is "DDM"; that is, *all* DDMs will be listed.

Selecting a Function

The following file maintenance functions are available (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
<u>A</u> D	Add file
<u>C</u> O	Copy file
<u>M</u> O	Modify file
D E	Delete file
<u>D</u> I	Display file
L L	Link libraries to file

To invoke a specific function for a file, mark the file with the appropriate function code in column "Co".

You may select various files for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several files on the screen with a function code. For each file marked, the appropriate processing screen will be displayed. You may then perform for one file after another the selected functions.

Add File

This function is used to define DDMs to Natural Security, that is, create new file security profiles.

On the Main Menu, enter "M" for "Maintenance". A window will be displayed. In the window, mark object type "File" with a character and enter "UNDF" in the Type/Status field (and, if desired, enter a start value).

The File Maintenance selection list will be displayed, listing all files with file status "UNDEFINED" (that is, all DDMs that have been generated but not yet been defined to Natural Security).

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the File Maintenance selection list, mark the DDM for which you wish to create a file security profile with function code "AD". The Add File screen will be displayed.

The individual items you may define on this screen and any additional windows that may be part of a file security profile are described under Components of a File Profile above.

When you add a file, the owners specified in your own user security profile will automatically be copied into the file security profile you are creating.

Copy File

This function is used to define a new file to Natural Security by creating a security profile which is identical to an already existing file security profile.

What is Copied?

All components of the existing security profile will be copied into the new file security profile - except the file number and database ID (these are taken from the DDM), and the owners (these will be copied from your own user security profile into the new file security profile you are creating).

Any links existing to the existing file will *not* be copied.

How to Copy

On the File Maintenance selection list, mark the file whose security profile you wish to duplicate with function code "CO".

A window will be displayed. In this window, enter the ID of the new file.

The new security profile will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile you may define or modify are described under Components of a File Profile above.

Modify File

This function is used to change an existing file security profile.

On the File Maintenance selection list, mark the file whose security profile you wish to change with function code "MO". The security profile of the selected file will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile you may define or modify are described under Components of a File Profile above.

Delete File

This function is used to delete an existing file security profile.

On the File Maintenance selection list, mark the file you wish to delete with function code "DE". A window will be displayed.

- If you have invoked the Delete File function and should then decide against deleting the given file security profile, you may leave the Delete File window by pressing ENTER without having typed in anything.
- If you wish to delete the given file security profile, enter the file's ID in the window to confirm the deletion.

When you delete a file, all existing links to the file will also be deleted.

When you delete a file security profile, the DDM itself will not be deleted. The file ID will remain in the File Maintenance selection list with File Status set to "UNDEFINED".

If a DDM is uncataloged in SYSDDM, deleted with SYSMAIN, or scratched in SYSDIC (Predict), the corresponding Natural Security file profile will automatically be deleted.

If you mark more than one file with "DE", a window will appear in which you are asked whether you wish to confirm the deletion of each file security profile by entering the file's ID, or whether all files selected for deletion are to be deleted without this individual confirmation. Be careful not to delete a file accidentally.

Display File

This function is used to display an existing file security profile.

On the File Maintenance selection list, mark the file whose security profile you wish to view with function code "DI". The security profile of the selected file will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile are described under Components of a File Profile above.

Linking Libraries To Files

To allow a library access to a file, a *link* has to be established between the library and the file.

Two functions are available to establish and maintain these links:

- To link *one library* to *various files*, you use the function "Link library to files" (which is invoked from the Library Maintenance selection list).
- To link *multiple libraries* to *one file*, you use the function "Link libraries to file" (which is invoked from the File Maintenance selection list).

Both functions are described below. Possible link types are summarized at the end of this section.

Linking a Single Library to a File

When you invoke the function "Link Library to Files" from the Library Maintenance selection list, a list of all files with file status ACCESS and PRIVATE will be displayed. On the list you may mark the files to which you wish to link the given library.

On the Library Maintenance selection, mark the library you wish to link with function code "LF". A window will be displayed in which you may specify a start value for the list of files. Then, the Link Library To Files selection list will be displayed, showing the list of files.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

In the "Co" column you may mark each file with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined>):

Code	Function
RE	Read-link - The library thus linked may only read the file, not update it.
UP	Update-link - The library thus linked may read and update the file.
CL	Cancel - An existing link will be cancelled.
DI	Display file - The file security profile will be displayed.

You can mark one or more files on the screen with a function code. For each file marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect between the library and each file.

Linking Multiple Libraries to a File

When you invoke the function "Link Libraries to File" from the Library Maintenance selection list, a list of all libraries that have been defined to Natural Security will be displayed. On the list you may mark the libraries you wish to be linked to the given file.

On the File Maintenance selection list, mark the file to which you wish to link libraries with function code "LL". A window will be displayed in which you may specify a start value for the list of libraries (leave the "Libraries/Private Libraries" field in the window set to "L" for Library). Then, the Link Libraries To File selection list will be displayed, showing the list of libraries.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

In the "Co" column you may mark each library with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
RE	Read-link - The library thus linked may only read the file, not update it.
UP	Update-link - The library thus linked may read and update the file.
CL	Cancel - An existing link will be cancelled.
DI	Display library - The library security profile will be displayed.

You can mark one or more libraries on the screen with a function code. For each library marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect between the file and each library.

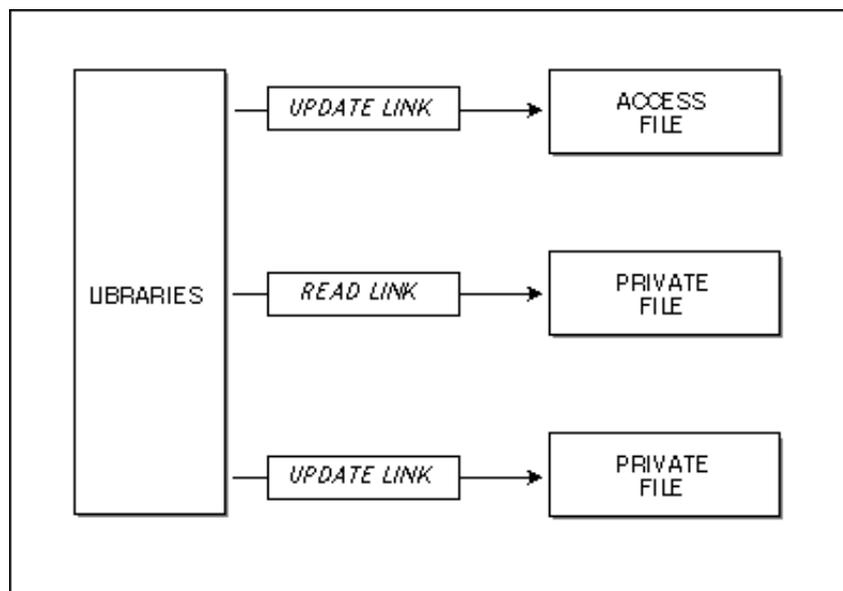
Possible Link Types

A link can only be established to a PRIVATE or ACCESS file, since there is no link required to read or update a PUBLIC file.

A link to a PRIVATE file can be specified as read-link (RE) or update-link (UP).

A link to an ACCESS file can only be specified as update-link (UP), since no link is required to read an ACCESS file.

The following figure shows all possible link types:



Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX And Windows

As explained in the section Natural Security On Different Platforms, the protection of DDMs with Natural Security is different on mainframe computers from that on other platforms. This section describes how to control the use of DDMs under *OpenVMS*, *UNIX* and *Windows 98/NT/2000*. The control of DDMs on mainframe computers is described in the section Protecting DDMs On Mainframes.

This section covers the following topics:

- Status of a DDM
 - DDM Security Profiles
 - Creating and Maintaining DDM Security Profiles
 - Add DDM Profile
 - Copy DDM Profile
 - Modify DDM Profile
 - Delete DDM Profile
 - Display DDM Profile
 - Copy Link to All Special Links
 - Linking a Library to a Protected DDM
-

Status of a DDM

Before a DDM can be used under Natural Security, its *status* must be defined in Natural Security. This status determines if the DDM can be used, that is, referenced in a database access statement (for example, READ, FIND, HISTOGRAM, STORE, UPDATE, DELETE) within a program.

Note:

Program in this context means any type of Natural programming object that can contain database access statements; that is, programs, subprograms, subroutines etc.

A DDM whose status is not defined, cannot be referenced.

For every DDM that is to be used, two status classifications have to be made in Natural Security:

- an *internal status* and
- an *external status*.

Internal Status

The internal status controls the use of the DDM *within* the library in which it is contained.

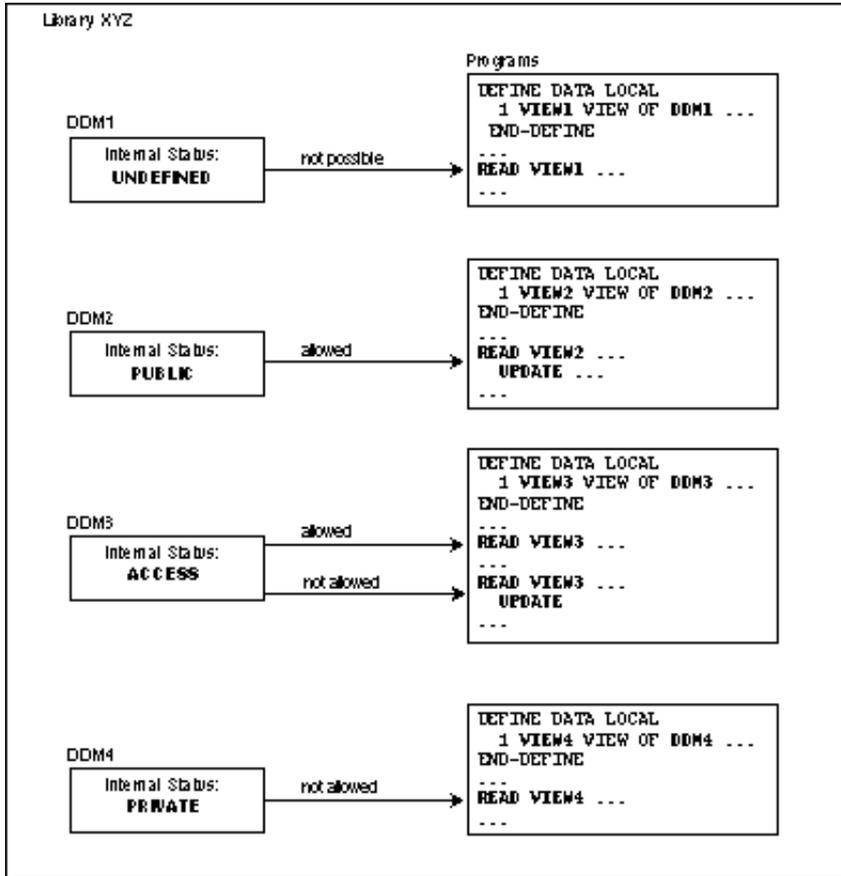
The internal status of a DDM may be one of the following:

PUBLIC	The DDM can be read and updated by all programs within the library.
ACCESS	The DDM can be read, but not updated, by all programs within the library.
PRIVATE	The DDM cannot be used by any program within the library.

The internal status only applies within the library in which the DDM is contained.

The check whether a program may use a DDM is made when the program is *compiled*.

The following diagram shows how the internal status affects the use of a DDM within a library:



External Status

The external status controls the use of the DDM *by other libraries*.

This requires that the library containing the DDM is used as a steplib by these other libraries. Libraries for which the library containing the DDM is not a steplib, cannot use the DDM anyhow.

The external status of a DDM may be one of the following:

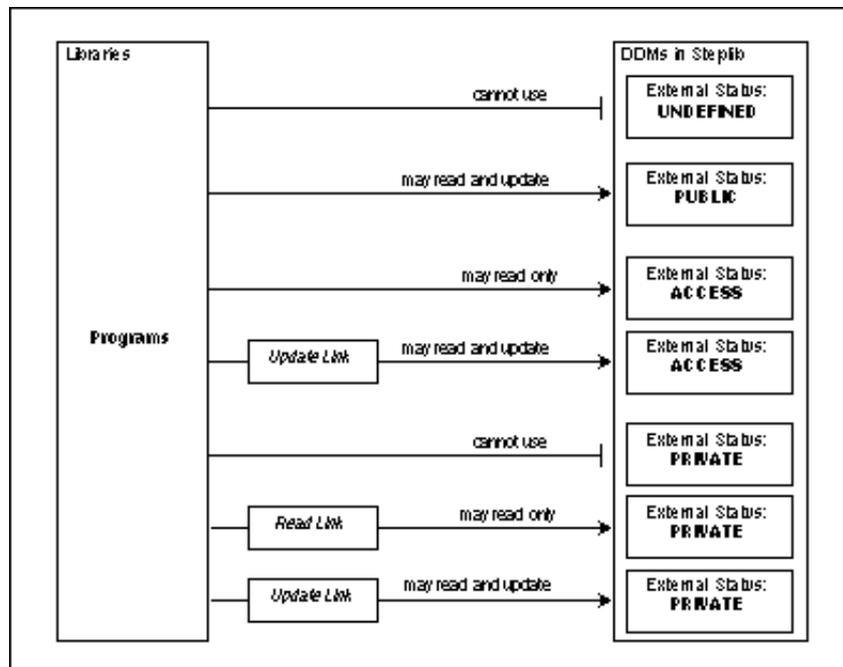
PUBLIC	The DDM is <i>not</i> protected. It can be used - that is, read and updated - by any library.
ACCESS	The DDM is protected as far as update is concerned. It can be read by any library. It may, however, be updated only by libraries which have been <i>linked</i> to it.
PRIVATE	The DDM is protected. It can be used only by libraries which have been <i>linked</i> to it. This <i>link</i> may be defined as "read" (that is, read only) or "update" (which implies read).

The external status of a DDM is only relevant if the library that contains the DDM is used as steplib by other libraries.

To allow a library to use a protected DDM in one of the library's steplibs, you have to define a *link* between the library and the DDM.

A link to a DDM whose external status is PRIVATE can be defined as "read link" or "update link". A link to a DDM whose external status is ACCESS can only be an "update link".

The possible relationships between libraries and DDMs in a steplib are shown in the following diagram:



Note:

A link can only be established to a DDM whose external status is ACCESS or PRIVATE, because no link is required to read or update a DDM whose external status is PUBLIC.

The check whether a program may use a DDM in a steplib is made when the program is *compiled*.

For information on how to link a library to a DDM, see [Linking a Library to a Protected DDM](#) below.

The Initial Status of a DDM

The initial internal and external status of a newly generated DDM depends on the option "Set Status of DDMs", which is set in the Restrictions window of the library profile (see [Components of a Library Profile](#) in the section [Library Maintenance](#)).

This option affects all DDMs in the library for which no security profiles have been defined.

By default, this option is set to "UNDF"; that is, both the internal and the external status of a new DDM are undefined to start with. Before a new DDM can be used by any program, you have to create a security profile for it and define its internal and external status in the profile.

If you set the option to "PUBL", both the internal and external status of all newly generated DDMs are automatically set to PUBLIC. This means that new DDMs can be used by any program within the same library and in libraries that use the library as steplib.

If you do not wish to restrict the use of these DDMs, you need not create security profiles for them or make any further security specifications.

If you wish to restrict the use of one of these DDMs, you have to define a security profile for it, and in the profile, change the internal and external status as desired.

If you reset the option "Set status of DDMs" from "PUBL" to "UNDF", the internal and external status of all PUBLIC DDMs without security profiles will be reset to being undefined.

DDM Security Profiles

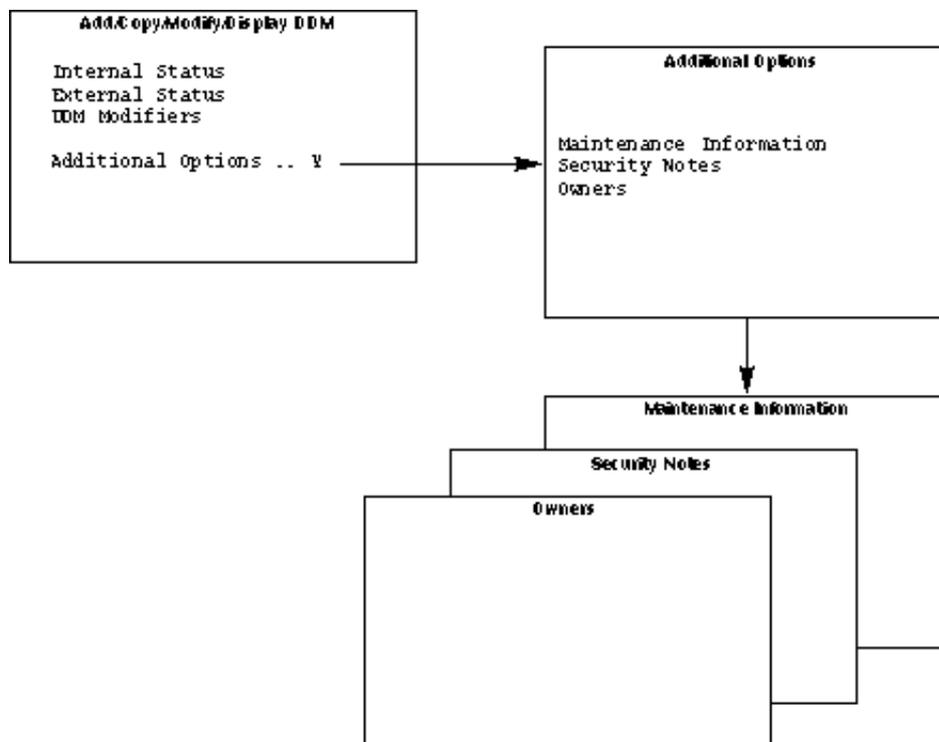
Unless the *initial status* of a DDM is automatically set to PUBLIC (see above), you have to define a security profile for every DDM that is to be used.

Apart from the internal and external status of a DDM, you can also specify a few other options in a DDM security profile:

- You can restrict maintenance of the DDM itself to specific users (DDM modifiers).
- You can restrict maintenance of the DDM security profile to specific users (owners).
- You can enter notes on the security profile.

These options are explained below.

Components of a DDM Security Profile



Field	Explanation
DDM Name (display only)	The name under which the DDM was generated.
DBID / FNR (display only)	The database ID and file number of the database file referenced by the DDM.
Internal Status / External Status	<p>See Status of a DDM above for an explanation. Possible values are:</p> <p>PUBL PUBLIC</p> <p>ACCE ACCESS</p> <p>PRIV PRIVATE.</p> <p>When you create a DDM security profile, the internal and external status will, by default, be set to "PUBL".</p>
DDM Modifiers	<p>You may enter up to eight IDs of users; only these users will then be allowed to maintain the DDM in Predict (or with Natural's DDM Services).</p> <p>If you do not specify any DDM modifier, the owners of the security profile (see Additional Options below) may maintain the DDM.</p> <p>If neither DDM modifiers nor owners are specified, maintenance of the DDM is not restricted.</p> <p>Next to the ID of each DDM modifier, you may optionally specify a number from 1 to 3; this number determines how many of the other DDM modifiers specified must countersign for maintenance permission (the countersignature logic which applies to DDM maintenance permission is analogous to that of owners and co-owners; see the section Countersignatures).</p>

Additional Options

If you mark the field "Additional Options" on the basic security profile screen with "Y", a window will be displayed from which you can select the following options:

- Maintenance Information
- Security Notes
- Owners

The options for which something has already been specified or defined are marked with a plus sign (+). You can select one or more items from the window by marking them with any character. For each item selected, an additional window will be displayed:

Additional Option	Explanation
Maintenance Information (display only)	In this window, the following information is displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the date and time when the security profile was created, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who created it, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the creation; ● the date and time when the security profile was last modified, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who made the last modification, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the modification.
Security Notes	In this window, you may enter your notes on the security profile.
Owners	In this window, you may enter up to eight IDs of ADMINISTRATORS. Only the ADMINISTRATORS specified here will be allowed to maintain this DDM security profile or link libraries to it. <p>If no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may maintain and link the security profile.</p> <p>For each owner, the number of co-owners whose countersignatures will be required for maintenance/link permission may optionally be specified in the field after the ID.</p> <p>For an explanation of owner and co-owners, see the section Countersignatures.</p>

Creating and Maintaining DDM Security Profiles

On the Library Maintenance selection list, you mark a library with the code "MD".

A window will be displayed, in which you can enter a start value for the list of DDMs (as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security).

Then a list of the DDMs contained in the library will be displayed.

For each DDM, the DDM name, the library ID, and the internal and external status are displayed. If a security profile exists for a DDM, this will be indicated in Column "P".

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

External Status as Selection Criterion

If you wish to list only DDMs of a specific status, you can specify one of the following selection criteria in the External Status field above the list:

PUBL	All DDMs of status PUBLIC.
ACCE	All DDMs of status ACCESS.
PRIV	All DDMs of status PRIVATE.
DEFI	Defined; that is, all DDMs of status PRIV, ACCE, and PUBL (*).
UNDF	Undefined; that is, all DDMs whose status is not PRIV, ACCE or PUBL (*).
DDM	All defined and undefined DDMs (*).
NDDM	DDM security profiles for which no corresponding DDMs exist (*).

* This is not an actual DDM status, but for selection purposes only.

The default status for selection is "DDM"; that is, *all* DDMs will be listed.

Selecting a Function

From the DDM list, you invoke all functions for creating and maintaining DDM security profiles. The following functions are available (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
<u>A</u> D	Add DDM Profile
<u>C</u> O	Copy DDM Profile
<u>M</u> O	Modify DDM Profile
<u>D</u> E	Delete DDM Profile
<u>D</u> I	Display DDM Profile
CU	Copy Link to All Special Links

To invoke a specific function for a DDM, mark the DDM with the appropriate function code in column "Co".

You may select various DDMs for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several DDMs on the screen with a function code. For each DDM marked, the appropriate processing screen will be displayed, and you can perform for one DDM after another the selected functions.

Add DDM Profile

With this function, you define a DDM to Natural Security, that is, create a new DDM security profile.

On the DDM selection list, enter "UNDF" in the field "Ext. Status".

Only those DDMs in the library which have not yet been defined to Natural Security will be listed. (The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security).

On the list, mark the DDM for which you wish to create a security profile with function code "AD". The Add DDM screen will be displayed.

The individual items you may define on this screen and any additional windows that may be part of a DDM security profile are described under Components of a DDM Security Profile above.

When you add a DDM, the owners specified in the security profile of the library in which the DDM is contained will automatically be copied into the DDM security profile you are creating.

Copy DDM Profile

With this function, you can define a DDM to Natural Security by creating a security profile which is identical to an already existing DDM security profile in the same library.

What is Copied?

All components of the existing DDM security profile will be copied into the new DDM security profile - except the file number and database ID, and the owners (the owners will be copied from your own user security profile into the new DDM security profile you are creating).

Any links existing to the "old" DDM will *not* be copied.

How to Copy

On the DDM selection list, mark the DDM whose security profile you wish to duplicate with function code "CO".

A window will be displayed. In this window, enter the name of the "new" DDM.

The new DDM security profile will be displayed. The individual items you may define or modify in the profile are described under Components of a DDM Security Profile above.

Modify DDM Profile

With this function, you can change an existing DDM security profile.

On the DDM selection list, mark the DDM whose security profile you wish to change with function code "MO". The DDM security profile will then be displayed. The individual items you may define or modify are described under Components of a DDM Security Profile above.

Delete DDM Profile

With this function, you can delete an existing DDM security profile.

On the DDM Maintenance selection list, mark the DDM you wish to delete with function code "DE". A window will be displayed.

- If you have invoked the Delete DDM function and should then decide against deleting the given DDM security profile, you may leave the window by pressing ENTER without having typed in anything.
- If you wish to delete the given DDM security profile, enter the DDM name in the window to confirm the deletion.

When you delete a DDM security profile, all existing links to it will also be deleted.

When you delete a DDM security profile, the DDM itself will not be deleted. The DDM name will remain in the DDM selection list with the internal status set to either "UNDF" (undefined) or "PUBL" (public), depending on the option "Set Status of DDMs" in the library profile (this option is described in the section Library Maintenance).

Note:

When a DDM itself is deleted (in Predict, or with Natural's DDM Services or SYSMAIN utility), the corresponding DDM security profile will not be deleted. To list the DDM profiles without DDMs in a library, you enter "NDDM" as selection criterion for the list of DDM profiles.

If you mark more than one DDM with "DE", a window will appear in which you are asked whether you wish to confirm the deletion of each DDM security profile by entering the DDM name, or whether all DDM profiles selected for deletion are to be deleted without this individual confirmation. Be careful not to delete a DDM profile accidentally.

Display DDM Profile

With this function, you can display an existing DDM security profile.

On the DDM selection list, mark the DDM whose security profile you wish to view with function code "DI". The DDM security profile will then be displayed. The individual items that are part of the profile are described under Components of a DDM Security Profile above.

Copy Link to All Special Links

With this function, you can copy an existing link between a DDM and a people-protected library, so that the same kind of link (read-link or update-link) is simultaneously established between the DDM and all users who have a special link to that library.

On the DDM selection list, mark the DDM whose link you wish to copy with function code "CU". A message will then be displayed stating that the link has been copied.

Linking a Library to a Protected DDM

To link a library to one or more protected DDMs in a steplib:

1. Invoke the DDM selection list of that library (as described under Creating and Maintaining DDM Security Profiles above).
2. In the Library field above the list, enter an asterisk (*). A window will be displayed listing all steplibs defined for the library.
3. Mark the steplib which contains the DDM(s) to which you wish to link the library. A list of all DDMs in the selected steplib with external status ACCESS and PRIVATE will be displayed. The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.
4. In the "Co" column of the list, you may mark one or more DDMs with one of the following function codes:

Code	Function
RE	Read-link - The library thus linked may only read the DDM, but not update it.
UP	Update-link - The library thus linked may read and update the DDM.
CL	Cancel - An existing link will be cancelled.
CU	Copy - An existing link between a DDM and a people-protected library will be copied, so that the same kind of link (read-link or update-link) is simultaneously established between the DDM and all users who have a special link to that library.

A link to a PRIVATE DDM can be specified as read-link (RE) or update-link (UP). A link to an ACCESS DDMs can only be specified as update-link (UP), since there is no link required to read an ACCESS DDM.

Protecting Natural Utilities



Natural Security provides an improved mechanism for controlling the use of Natural utilities, as described in this section. It is strongly recommended that this new mechanism be used, as it provides more efficient protection of utility functions.

The old Version 2 mechanism for protecting Natural utilities (described in the section System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism) is still available for compatibility reasons, but will be removed with one of the next releases of Natural Security.

This section describes how you can control with Natural Security the use of various Natural utilities. It covers the following topics:

- Which Utilities Can Be Protected?
- Utility Profiles
- Defining Default Profiles
- Defining Individual Profiles - Utility Maintenance

Please note that any protection settings in library security profiles ("People-/Terminal-protected") and any links to protected libraries *do not* apply if the use of utilities is controlled by utility profiles.

Which Utilities Can Be Protected?

The use of the following Natural utilities can be controlled with Natural Security:

- NATLOAD
- NATUNLD
- SYSBPM
- SYSDDM
- SYSERR
- SYSMAIN
- SYSOBJH
- SYSPARM
- SYSRPC
- SYSTRANS

Utility Profiles

Utility protection is function-oriented, which means that it is based on the concept that you can allow or disallow individual functions of a utility. To control the use of a utility, you need not define a library security profile for the library which contains the utility.

You control the use of a utility by defining *utility profiles* for it. In a utility profile, you can allow and disallow the individual functions of the utility.

Basically, a utility profile consists of a list of the utility's functions, each of which can be allowed or disallowed by marking it with "A" or "D" respectively.

Types of Utility Profiles

For each utility listed above, you can define:

- a default profile,
- user-specific profiles,
- library-specific profiles,
- user-library-specific profiles.

Each utility is treated individually; that is, any utility profiles only apply to the utility they are defined for, and not to any other utilities.

Note:

If the use of a utility is protected by a utility profile, the profile parameter settings MADIO=0 and MAXCL=0 apply automatically.

Default Utility Profile

The *default profile* of a utility applies for all users (except those for which user-specific profiles are defined). It determines which of the utility's functions the users may use and which not.

User-Specific Utility Profiles

If an individual user is to use (or not to use) other functions than the other users, you can define a *user-specific utility profile*.

Such a profile only applies to this user, it overrides the default profile, and determines which of the utility's functions this particular user may use and which not.

Example:

<p>Default Profile for SYSBPM Utility</p> <p>Functions</p> <p>...</p> <p>D Delete Object from Buffer Pool Disallowed</p> <p>...</p>
<p>User-Specific Profile of User UX for SYSBPM Utility</p> <p>Functions</p> <p>...</p> <p>A Delete Object from Buffer Pool Allowed</p> <p>...</p>

In this example, the SYSBPM function "Delete Object from Buffer Pool" is disallowed for all users - except for the user UX, for whom it is allowed.

This means that UX is the only user who may delete objects from the buffer pool.

User-specific utility profiles can be defined for users of types GROUP, ADMINISTRATOR and PERSON.

A user-specific utility profile can only be defined if a default profile (or a template) has been defined for that utility. (Templates are described under Defining Default Profiles below.)

Library-Specific Utility Profiles

Several utilities affect individual Natural libraries (for example, SYSERR can be used to maintain error messages that belong to a specific library). Generally, the utility's default profile applies to all affected libraries.

However, if some of the utility's functions are only to be allowed/disallowed for a particular library, you can define a *library-specific utility profile*.

Such a profile only applies to this library, it overrides the default profile as well as any user-specific profiles for that utility, and determines which of the utility's functions may be applied to this library and which not.

Example 1:

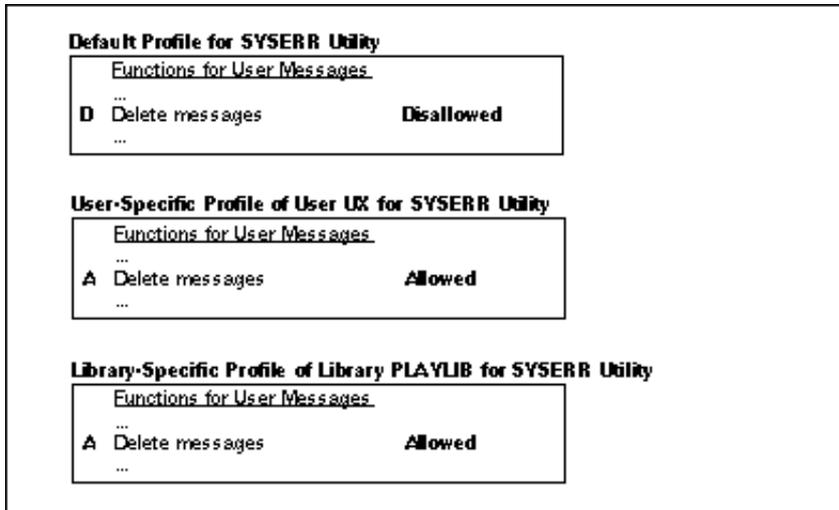
Default Profile for SYSERR Utility	
<u>Functions for User Messages</u>	
...	
A Delete messages	Allowed
...	
Library-Specific Profile of Library MYLIB for SYSERR Utility	
<u>Functions for User Messages</u>	
...	
D Delete messages	Disallowed
...	

In this example, the SYSERR function "Delete messages" is allowed for all libraries - except for the library MYLIB, for which it is disallowed.

This means that all users can delete user error messages from any library, except from library MYLIB. No-one can delete messages from MYLIB.

(If any user-specific profiles were defined for SYSERR, they would apply to all other libraries, but not to library MYLIB.)

Example 2:



In this example, the SYSERR function "Delete messages" is disallowed for all libraries - except for the library PLAYLIB, for which it is allowed. For the user UX, the function "Delete messages" is allowed for all libraries.

This means that all users can delete error messages from library PLAYLIB. However, no user - except user UX - can delete messages from any other library. User UX is the only user who may delete messages from any library (including PLAYLIB).

Please note that user UX's permission to delete messages from PLAYLIB depends on the library-specific profile, not the user-specific profile.

Library-specific utility profiles can be defined for the following utilities: NATLOAD, NATUNLD, SYSBPM, SYSDDM, SYSERR, SYSMAIN, SYSOBJH, SYSTRANS.

A library-specific utility profile can only be defined if a default profile has been defined for that utility.

User-Library-Specific Utility Profiles

As described above, several utilities affect individual Natural libraries. Two kinds of situations may occur in which a *user-library-specific utility profile* may have to be defined:

- A *user-specific* utility profile determines which of a utility's functions a particular user may use, regardless of the libraries which are affected by the functions (provided that no *library-specific* profiles are defined for this utility). However, if this user is to have different function usage permissions for a particular library affected by the utility's functions, you can define these in a *user-library-specific* utility profile.
- A *library-specific* utility profile determines which of a utility's functions may be used when applied to a particular library; for this library, it applies for all users (regardless of any *user-specific* profiles). However, if a particular user is to have different function usage permissions for this library, you can define these in a *user-library-specific* utility profile.

A *user-library-specific* profile only applies for one user and one library, it overrides the library-specific utility profile of that library as well as the user-specific profile of that user, and it determines which of the utility's functions the user may use for this library.

Example 1:

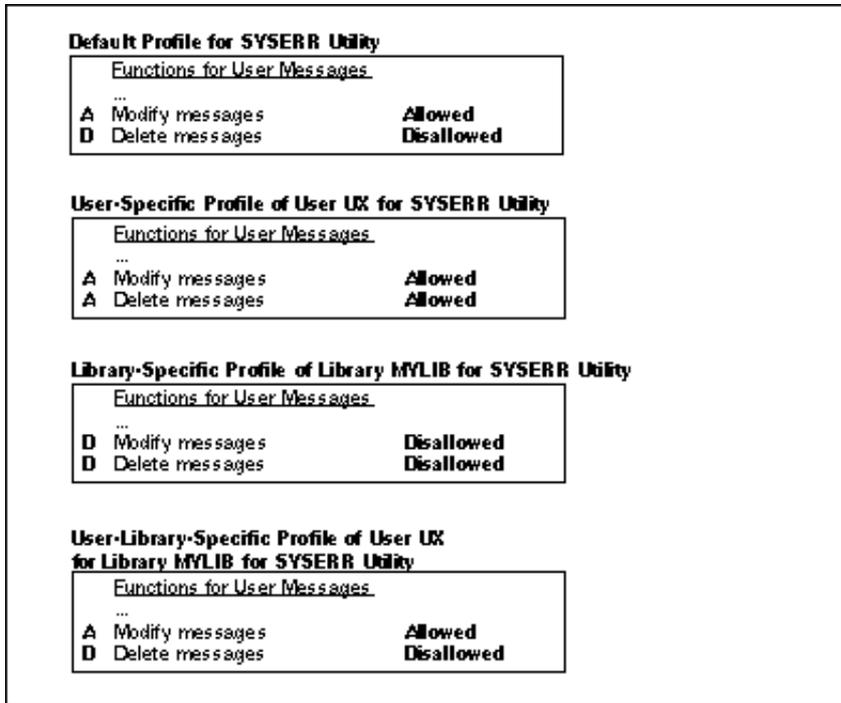
Default Profile for SYSERR Utility	
<u>Functions for User Messages</u>	
...	
D Modify messages	Disallowed
D Delete messages	Disallowed
User-Specific Profile of User UX for SYSERR Utility	
<u>Functions for User Messages</u>	
...	
A Modify messages	Allowed
D Delete messages	Disallowed
User-Library-Specific Profile of User UX for Library MYLIB for SYSERR Utility	
<u>Functions for User Messages</u>	
...	
A Modify messages	Allowed
A Delete messages	Allowed

In this example, the SYSERR function "Delete messages" is disallowed for all users (due to the default profile). The SYSERR function "Modify messages" is also disallowed for all users (due to the default profile) - except for user UX, for whom it is allowed (due to his/her user-specific profile). Also, for the user UX both functions are allowed for the library MYLIB (due to the user-library-specific profile).

This means that no user can modify or delete any error messages from any library. The only exception is user UX: User UX may modify messages from any library; moreover, user UX may delete messages from library MYLIB (but not from any other library).

Please note that user UX's permission to modify messages from MYLIB depends on the user-library-specific profile, not the user-specific profile.

Example 2:



This example results in the following setup:

- Error messages of library MYLIB may only be modified by user UX.
- Error messages of any other library may be modified by any user.
- Error messages of library MYLIB cannot be deleted by any user.
- Error messages of any other library may only be deleted by user UX, but not by any other user.

User-library-specific utility profiles can be defined for the following utilities: NATLOAD, NATUNLD, SYSBPM, SYSDDM, SYSERR, SYSMAN, SYSOBJH, SYSTRANS.

A user-library-specific utility profile can only be defined for a user for which a user-specific utility profile has been defined.

Which Utility Profile Applies?

When a user tries to use a utility function, Natural Security looks for the appropriate utility profile to determine whether the user is allowed to perform the function.

Natural Security looks for the following utility profiles in the following order:

1. the **user-library-specific** profile of the **user** for the library affected (only if the user is of type A or P);
2. the **user-library-specific** profile of the **group** in which the user is contained for the library affected;
3. the **library-specific** profile of the library affected;
4. the **user-specific** profile of the **user** (only if the user is of type A or P);
5. the **user-specific** profile of the **group** in which the user is contained;
6. the utility's **default** profile.

The first profile encountered in this search determines whether the user is allowed to perform the function.

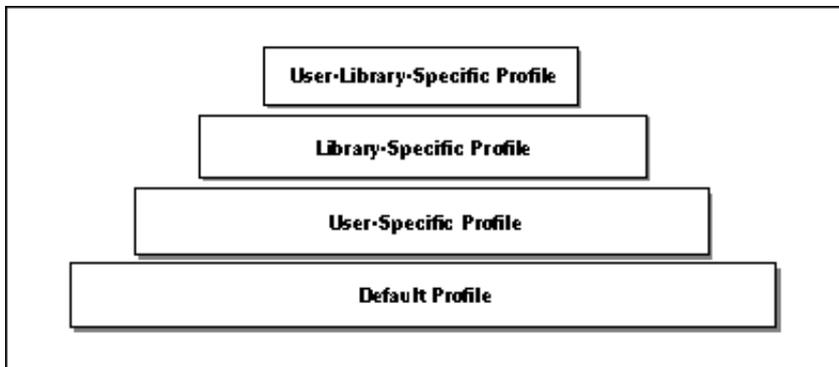
For this search, Natural Security uses the user ID and group ID as determined by the current values of the system variables *USER and *GROUP respectively.

If none of the above profiles exists, the "old" utility protection mechanism applies.

A user may obtain information about the utility profile which currently applies by using the Natural system command PROFILE (see also the PROFILE Command in the section Protecting Libraries).

The following diagram shows the hierarchy of the utility profiles.

Hierarchy of Utility Profiles



Example:

Assume the following situation: User UX (user type A), who is contained in group GX, wants to copy programming objects with the SYSMAIN utility from library LIB1 to library LIB2.

First, Natural Security checks if the user may copy programming objects with SYSMAIN **from library LIB1**; that is, if the Copy function for Programming Objects is allowed:

1. It checks the *user-library-specific* profile of user UX and library LIB1 for SYSMAIN.
2. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *user-library-specific* profile of user GX and library LIB1 for SYSMAIN.
3. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *library-specific* profile of library LIB1 for SYSMAIN.
4. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *user-specific* profile of user UX for SYSMAIN.
5. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *user-specific* profile of user GX for SYSMAIN.
6. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *default* profile of SYSMAIN.

Then, Natural Security checks if the user may copy programming objects with SYSMAIN **into library LIB2**; that is, if the Copy function for Programming Objects is allowed:

1. It checks the *user-library-specific* profile of user UX and library LIB2 for SYSMAIN.
2. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *user-library-specific* profile of user GX and library LIB2 for SYSMAIN.
3. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *library-specific* profile of library LIB2 for SYSMAIN.
4. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *user-specific* profile of user UX for SYSMAIN.
5. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *user-specific* profile of user GX for SYSMAIN.
6. If no such profile exists,
it checks the *default* profile of SYSMAIN.

When Does a Utility Profile Take Effect?

As the various Natural utilities and their functions differ greatly from one another, the time when Natural Security checks whether a user may use a requested utility function differs from utility to utility (and from function to function).

Further Utility Protection Considerations

Normally a user invokes a utility by entering the corresponding system command (for example, to invoke the SYSERR utility, you enter the system command SYSERR). In this case, one of the utility profiles defined for this utility applies and controls the use of the utility as described in this section.

However, it is also possible (although not recommended) to invoke a utility by logging on to the library which contains the utility (for example, with the system command LOGON SYSERR). In this case, the *library* security profile of that library controls whether the utility may be invoked. To prevent this, either *do not define a library security profile for a utility library* in the first place, or, if you need such a security profile for some purpose, define it as "People-protected".

Available System Commands

When a user uses a utility under the control of a utility profile, the only Natural system commands available to the user within the utility are: FIN, LOGON, MAIL and PROFILE; all other system commands cannot be used. The reason for this is to preclude any "loopholes" in the protection established by the utility profiles.

Where to Define Profiles?

To define *default profiles*, you use the Administrator Services section of Natural Security (as described under Defining Default Profiles below).

To define *all other utility profiles*, you use the Utility Maintenance section of Natural Security (as described under Defining Individual Profiles - Utility Maintenance below).

Defining Default Profiles

On the Main Menu, you select "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services in the section Administrator Services.

On the Administrator Services Menu 2, you select "Definition of utility defaults/templates". The Define Utility Defaults/Templates screen will be displayed, listing all the utilities for which profiles can be defined.

The status of a utility (as indicated in the Message field) can be one of the following:

Status	Meaning
Nothing defined	No profile is defined for the utility. The use of the utility is controlled by the "old" protection mechanism. See the section System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism.
Default defined	A default profile has been defined for the utility. This default profile applies for all users for which no individual user-specific profile is defined. Any "old" protection mechanism settings are ignored for this utility.
Template defined	A profile has been defined for the utility. However, this profile can only be used as a template to define individual user-specific utility profiles. The use of the utility is controlled by the "old" protection mechanism (see the section System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism), except for those users for which a user-specific utility profile is defined. This status is primarily intended to allow you a smooth transition from the "old" to the "new" protection mechanism.

Whether a default profile is a "real" profile or only a template is determined by the field "Applies as Default Profile" (see below) within the profile.



To avoid the applicability of the "old" and the "new" protection mechanism getting mixed up, you should always define a default profile (not only a template) for a utility if you intend to define user-specific profiles for that utility.

On the Define Utility Defaults/Templates screen, you can mark a utility with one of the following function codes:

Code	Function
AD	Define a default profile or template for the utility.
MO	Modify the utility's existing default profile or template.
DE	Delete the utility's existing default profile or template.
DI	Display the utility's existing default profile or template.

When you mark a utility with code "DE", a window will be displayed in which you confirm the deletion by entering the utility name. When you delete a utility's default profile or template, all other profiles for that utility - that is, user-specific, library-specific and user-library-specific utility profiles - will also be deleted.

When you mark a utility with code "AD", "MO" or "DI", its default profile or template will be displayed.

The profile for each utility provides several options, which correspond to functions of the utility concerned. The individual options are described below for each utility.

You can *allow* or *disallow* each option by marking it with "A" or "D" respectively. Initially, all options are disallowed.

Note:

Natural Security performs consistency checks on the combinations of allowed and disallowed options - impossible combinations of "A" and "D" will automatically be rejected.

Moreover, each profile provides the following field, which determines whether the profile is a "real" default profile or only a template:

Applies as Default Profile

Y	Default Profile - The profile applies for all users for which no individual utility profile is defined.
N	Template - The profile does not apply for any user. It can only be used as a template for the definition of individual user-specific utility profiles.

Once this field is set to "Y" and any user-specific or library-specific profiles have been defined for that utility, you *cannot* reset this field to "N". This is to ensure consistent utility protection.

Default Profile for NATLOAD Utility

The profile for the NATLOAD utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
Load Natural Objects	Determines whether the user may load programming objects.
Del.	Determines whether the user may process delete instructions for programming objects (this requires that the loading of programming objects is allowed).
Load DDMs	Determines whether the user may load DDMs.
Del.	Determines whether the user may process delete instructions for DDMs (this requires that the loading of DDMs is allowed).
Load Error Messages	Determines whether the user may load error messages.
Del.	Determines whether the user may process delete instructions for error messages (this requires that the loading of error messages is allowed).
Scan Natural Objects	Determines whether the user may scan the work file for programming objects.
Scan DDMs	Determines whether the user may scan the work file for DDMs.
Scan Error Messages	Determines whether the user may scan the work file for error messages.
PC Upload	Determine whether the user may use the NATLOAD parameters of the same names.
Replace	
New Library	

Default Profile for NATUNLD Utility

The profile for the NATUNLD utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
Unload Natural Objects	Determines whether the user may unload programming objects.
Unload DDMs	Determines whether the user may unload DDMs.
Unload Error Messages	Determines whether the user may unload error messages.
Unload Delete Instructions	Determines whether the user may unload delete instructions.
PC Download	Determine whether the user may use the NATUNLD parameters of the same names.
Target Library	

Default Profile for SYSBPM Utility

The SYSBPM utility is only available with Natural on mainframe computers.

The profile for the SYSBPM utility provides the following options:

Buffer Pool Statistics

Option	Explanation
Display General	Determine whether the user may use the SYSBPM functions/commands of the same names.
- General BP Statistics (*)	
- BP Load/Locate Statistics (*)	
- Fragmentation (*)	
- Internal Function Usage (*)	
- BP Hash Table Statistics	
Display Cache	
- General BP Cache Statistics	
- BP Cache Call Statistics	
- BP Cache Hash Table Statistics	

Buffer Pool Library Object Maintenance

Option	Explanation
Buffer Pool Statistics	Determine whether the user may use the SYSBPM functions/commands of the same names.
- Individual Obj. Statistics (*)	
- Obj. Directory Information (*)	
- Display Object Hexadecimal (*)	
Blacklist Maintenance (*)	
- Maintain Blacklist ADD	
- Add Object Set to Blacklist	
- Maintain Blacklist DELETE	
- Maintain Blacklist DELETE ALL	
- Delete Obj. Set from Blacklist	
- Maintain Blacklist	
- Edit Object Set	
- List Object Sets	
- Maintain Blacklist UPDATE	
Preload List Maintenance (*)	
- Edit Preload List	
- Gen. Preload List from BP	
- List Preload Lists	
Functions for the Objects Displayed	
- CLEAR	
- DELETE	
- FDELETE	
- RESIDENT	

Buffer Pool Global Commands

Option	Explanation
CHECK HASH	Determine whether the user may use the SYSBPM functions/commands of the same names.
CLOSE BPC	
CLOSE HASH	
Delete Obj.	
- DELETE BP (*)	
- DELETE BPC	
INITIALIZE	
- INITIALIZE BP	
- INITIALIZE BPC	
INITIALIZE OLD (*)	
REBUILD HASH	
REORG HASH	
REORGC HASH	
RESET BP	
SELECT BP	
DISPLAY BP (*)	

(*) Note:

With Natural Version 3.1.5, the SYSBPM utility was revised. Consequently, the structure of SYSBPM's Natural Security utility profiles was also restructured. On the utility profile screens, the functions/commands which already existed in the old profiles are marked with an asterisk (*); the Natural Security protection of these functions/commands is fully compatible with previous versions. However, in order to control the full range of SYSBPM functions/commands properly, you may have to adjust in your SYSBPM utility profiles the settings of the new functions/commands, that is, those which are *not* marked with an asterisk

Default Profile for SYSDDM Utility

The SYSDDM utility is only available with Natural on mainframe computers.

The profile for the SYSDDM utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
Generate DDM from Adabas FDT	Determine whether the user may use the SYSDDM functions of the same names.
Catalog DDM	
Edit DDM	
Delete DDM	
List DDMs	
List DDMs with Additional Information	
Copy DDM to Another FDIC File	
Show Defined DBIDs and Used FNRs	
SQL Services	
DL/I Services	
Rename DDM	

Default Profile for SYSERR Utility

The profile for the SYSERR utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
Add New Messages	Determine whether the user may use the SYSERR functions of the same names.
Delete Messages	
Display Messages	
Modify Messages	
Print Messages	
Scan in Messages	
Select Messages from a List	
Translate Messages into Another Language	

You can allow/disallow these options separately for:

- user messages (PF7),
- Natural system messages (PF8).

Default Profile for SYSMAIN Utility

The SYSMAIN utility is not identical on all platforms, so that some of the following SYSMAIN options and functions may not be available on some platforms.

The profile for the SYSMAIN utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
Programming Objects	This general setting in the first column of the screen determines whether the user may use SYSMAIN at all for this type of object. If this is set to "D" (disallowed), all subordinate function specifications for this object type must also be set to "D".
Debug Environments	
User Messages	
DDMs	
Natural Messages	
Profiles	
Rules	
DL/I Subfiles	
Resources	

In addition, you can allow/disallow the following functions for each object type individually:

Option	Explanation
Co	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function COPY for this type of object.
De	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function DELETE for this type of object.
Fi	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function FIND for this type of object.
Im	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function IMPORT for this type of object.
Li	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function LIST for this type of object.
Mo	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function MOVE for this type of object.
Ren	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function RENAME for this type of object.
Rep	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function REPLACE for this type of object.
FNAT	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function SET FNAT for this type of object. (*)
FSEC	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function SET FSEC for this type of object. (*)
FDIC	Determines whether the user may use the SYSMAIN function SET FDIC for this type of object. (*)

(*) These options can be set in the default profile and in user-specific profiles, but not in library-specific or user-library-specific profiles.

Default Profile for SYSOBJH Utility

The SYSOBJH utility is not available with Natural on mainframe computers.

Note:

If you use a central mainframe FSEC system file in a multiple-platform configuration (see also Using Natural Security On Multiple Platforms), you would define utility profiles for the SYSOBJH utility on the mainframe computer, although the utility itself is not available on mainframes.

The profile for the SYSOBJH utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
Unload	Determines whether the user may use the SYSOBJH Unload function.
Load	Determines whether the user may use the SYSOBJH Load function.
Delete	Determines whether the user may use the SYSOBJH Delete function.

In addition, you can allow/disallow the above functions for each object type individually:

Option	Explanation
Nat	Determines whether the function may be applied to Natural programming objects.
Err	Determines whether the function may be applied to error messages.
CPr	Determines whether the function may be applied to command processors.
NRe	Determines whether the function may be applied to Natural-related objects.
Ext	Determines whether the function may be applied to external objects.
FDT	Determines whether the function may be applied to Adabas FDTs.
Par	Determines whether SYSOBJH parameters may be specified for the function.
Rep	Determines whether the SYSOBJH parameter REPLACE may be specified for the function.

Also, the profile for SYSOBJH provides the following general options:

Option	Explanation
Admin	Determine whether the user may use the "Admin" section of SYSOBJH.
FSEC	Determines whether the user may specify the SYSOBJH parameters of the same names.
FDIC	
Transfer only	Determines whether only sources may be processed (Y) or sources and objects may be processed (N).

Default Profile for SYSPARM Utility

The SYSPARM utility is only available with Natural on mainframe computers.

The profile for the SYSPARM utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
List Profiles	Determine whether the user may use the SYSPARM functions of the same names.
Display Profile	
Add New Profile	
Modify Profile	
Copy Profile	
Delete Profile	

Default Profile for SYSRPC Utility

The profile for the SYSRPC utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
Parameter Maintenance	Determine whether the user may use the SYSRPC functions of the same names.
Service Directory Maintenance	
Remote Directory Maintenance	
Stub Generation	
Terminate Server	

Default Profile for SYSTRANS Utility

The profile for the SYSTRANS utility provides the following options:

Option	Explanation
Unload	Determines whether the user may use the SYSTRANS Unload function.
Load	Determines whether the user may use the SYSTRANS Load function.
Replace	Determines whether the user may use the Replace option of the SYSTRANS Load function.
Scan	Determines whether the user may use the SYSTRANS Scan function.
Restart	Determines whether the user may use the SYSTRANS Restart function.

In addition, you can allow/disallow the above functions for each object type individually:

Option	Explanation
NAT	Determines whether the function may be applied to Natural programming objects.
Map	Determines whether the function may be applied to maps.
DDM	Determines whether the function may be applied to DDMs.
FDT	Determines whether the function may be applied to Adabas FDTs.
Err	Determines whether the function may be applied to error messages.
CPr	Determines whether the function may be applied to command processors.
Lib	Determines whether the function may be applied to libraries.
All	Determines whether the function may be applied to all objects on the work file to be processed.

Also, the profile for SYSTRANS provides the following options, which apply to the Direct Transfer functions of SYSTRANS:

Option	Explanation
Direct Transfer Functions	Determine whether the user may use any SYSTRANS Direct Transfer functions (using Natural RPC).
Transfer	Determines whether the user may use the SYSTRANS function "Direct Transfer (using RPC)".
Restart	Determines whether the user may use the SYSTRANS function "Restart Direct Transfer".
Report	Determines whether the user may use the SYSTRANS function "Get Report from Direct Transfer Load".
Define	Determines whether the user may use the SYSTRANS function "Define Local Transfer System".

Defining Individual Profiles - Utility Maintenance

Natural Security's Utility Maintenance is used to perform all functions related to the maintenance of individual utility profiles (that is, user-specific profiles, library-specific profiles and user-library-specific profiles).

The components of an individual profile correspond to those of the corresponding default profile (as described under Defining Default Profiles above).

Note:

Owner logic applies to the creation/maintenance of individual utility profiles.

How to Invoke Utility Maintenance

On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance". A window will be displayed.

In the window, mark object type "Utility" with a character or with the cursor. The Utility Maintenance selection list will be displayed.

The Utility Maintenance selection list shows all utilities for which either a default profile or a template has been defined. For each utility, the following information is displayed:

Default	Indicates whether a default profile has been defined for this utility (YES/NO). "NO" means that only a template has been defined.
User	Indicates whether any user-specific profiles exist for this utility (YES/NO).
Library	Indicates whether any library-specific profiles exist for this utility (YES/NO).
User-Lib.	Indicates whether any user-library-specific profiles exist for this utility (YES/NO).

Utility Maintenance Functions

From the Utility Maintenance selection list, you invoke all functions for the creation, modification, deletion and display of individual utility profiles.

The following functions are available:

Code	Function
DD	Display default profile or template. This function displays the default profile (or the template) defined for a utility.
Functions for <i>user-specific</i> utility profiles:	
DU	Display user-specific profiles. This function displays a list of existing user-specific profiles for a utility. From the list, you can select the profiles to be displayed.
AU	Add or maintain user-specific profiles. This function displays a list of users (of types A, P and G). From the list, you can select the users for which you wish to define user-specific profiles for a utility.
MU	Maintain user-specific profiles. This function displays a list of existing user-specific profiles for a utility. From the list, you can select the profiles to be maintained.
Functions for <i>library-specific</i> utility profiles:	
DL	Display library-specific profiles. This function displays a list of existing library-specific profiles for a utility. From the list, you can select the profiles to be displayed.
AL	Add or maintain library-specific profiles. This function displays a list of libraries. From the list, you can select the libraries for which you wish to define library-specific utility profiles.
ML	Maintain library-specific profiles. This function displays a list of existing library-specific profiles for a utility. From the list, you can select the profiles to be maintained.
Functions for <i>user-library-specific</i> utility profiles:	
DX	Display user-library-specific profiles. This function displays a list of existing user-library-specific profiles of a specific user for a utility. From the list, you can select the profiles to be displayed.
AX	Add or maintain user-library-specific profiles. This function displays a list of libraries. From the list, you can select the libraries for which you wish to define user-library-specific utility profiles for a specific user.
MX	Maintain user-library-specific profiles. This function displays a list of existing user-library-specific profiles of a specific user for a utility. From the list, you can select the profiles to be maintained.

"Add or Maintain" or "Maintain"?

The "Add or Maintain" functions (codes AU, AL, AX) display lists of all users/libraries, comprising those for which utility profiles exist as well as those for which no utility profiles have been defined. They allow you to add new utility profiles as well as modify, delete and display existing utility profiles.

The "Maintain" functions (codes MU, ML, MX) display lists of only those users/libraries for which utilities profiles exist. They allow you to modify, delete and display existing utility profiles.

You can "switch" directly from "Add or Maintain" to "Maintain" by reducing the displayed list from a list of all users/libraries to a list of only those with existing profiles. To do so, you mark with "X" the selection criterion field "U" (user-specific profile exists) "L" (library-specific profile exists) or "U-L" (user-library-specific profile exists) respectively in the heading of the list.

However, if you know beforehand that you are going to only maintain existing profiles but not add any new ones, it is recommended (for better performance) that you directly use codes MU, ML and MX respectively.

Start Values

Each of the functions listed displays a list of items (users, libraries, profiles). When you invoke a function, a window will be displayed in which you can enter a start value for the list of items to be displayed.

For functions related to *user-library-specific* profiles, the ID of the user whose user-library-specific profiles are to be listed must also be specified in the start value window.

Subfunctions

When you invoke one of the functions listed, you get a list of items (users, libraries or utility profiles).

On this list, you mark one or more items with a code to invoke a subfunction to be performed on the item.

The available subfunctions (Add, Modify, etc.) differ depending on the function invoked.

For a list of available subfunctions, you enter a question mark (?) in the field "Co".

Information Displayed

Add/Maintain/Display User-Specific Utility Profiles

On the selection list of users displayed with function codes AU, DU and MU, the following information is displayed for each user:

Type	Indicates the user type (A, P or G).
U	An "X" indicates that the user has a user-specific profile for this utility.
U-L	An "X" indicates that the user has one or more user-library-specific profiles for this utility.

Add/Maintain/Display Library-Specific Utility Profiles

On the selection list of libraries displayed with function codes AL, DL and ML, the following information is displayed for each library:

Prot.	Indicates the "people-protected" and "terminal-protected" settings as defined in the library security profile.
Link	(empty)
L	An "X" indicates that the library has a library-specific profile for this utility.
U	An "X" indicates that the library has one or more user-library-specific profiles for this utility.

Add/Maintain/Display User-Library-Specific Utility Profiles

On the selection list of libraries displayed with function codes AX, DX and MX, the following information is displayed for each library:

Prot.	Indicates the "people-protected" and "terminal-protected" settings as defined in the library security profile.
Link	Indicates whether the user is linked to the library (LK = normal link, SL = special link).
U-L	An "X" indicates that the user has a user-library-specific profile for this library for this utility.
L	An "X" indicates that the library has a library-specific profile for this utility.

Adding a User-Specific Utility Profile

A user-specific utility profile can only be defined for a utility for which either a *default profile* or a *template* exists.

To add a user-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "AU". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a start value for the list of users to be displayed. Then a list of users (of types A, P and G) will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired user with "AD". The user-specific profile for the utility will be displayed for you to define.

The options you can allow or disallow within the profile are the same as in the corresponding default profile or template (see Defining Default Profiles above).

The initial "allowed/disallowed" settings in the user-specific profile are taken from the default profile or the template.

Modifying/Displaying a User-Specific Utility Profile

To modify or display a user-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "MU" or "DU" respectively. A window will be displayed in which you can enter a start value for the list of user-specific profiles to be displayed. Then a list of existing user-specific profiles for the selected utility will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired profile with "MO" (modify) or "DU" (display) respectively. The profile will be displayed for modification/display.

The options in the profile are the same as in the corresponding default profile or template (see Defining Default Profiles above).

Deleting a User-Specific Utility Profile

To delete a user-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "MU". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a start value for the list of user-specific profiles to be displayed. Then a list of existing user-specific profiles for the selected utility will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired profile with "DE". A window will be displayed in which you confirm the deletion.

When you delete a user-specific utility profile, all *user-library-specific* utility profiles for this user for this utility will also be deleted.

Adding a Library-Specific Utility

A library-specific utility profile can only be defined for a utility for which a *default profile* (not only a template) has been defined.

To add a library-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "AL". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a start value for the list of libraries to be displayed. Then a list of libraries will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired library with "AD". The library-specific profile for the utility will be displayed for you to define.

The options you can allow or disallow within the profile are the same as in the corresponding default profile (see Defining Default Profiles above).

The initial "allowed/disallowed" settings in the library-specific profile are taken from the default profile.

Modifying/Displaying a Library-Specific Utility Profile

To modify or display a library-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "ML" or "DL" respectively. A window will be displayed in which you can enter a start value for the list of library-specific profiles to be displayed. Then a list of existing library-specific profiles for the selected utility will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired profile with "MO" (modify) or "DL" (display) respectively. The profile will be displayed for modification/display.

The options in the profile are the same as in the corresponding default profile (see Defining Default Profiles above).

Deleting a Library-Specific Utility Profile

To delete a library-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "ML". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a start value for the list of library-specific profiles to be displayed. Then a list of existing library-specific profiles for the selected utility will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired profile with "DE". A window will be displayed in which you confirm the deletion.

Adding a User-Library-Specific Utility Profile

A user-library-specific utility profile can only be defined for a user for which a *user-specific profile* for that utility exists.

To add a library-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "AX". A window will be displayed in which you enter the ID of the user for whom a user-library-specific profile is to be defined; also, you can enter a start value for the list of libraries to be displayed. Then a list of libraries will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired library with "AD". The user-library-specific profile for the specified user for this library will be displayed for you to define.

The options you can allow or disallow within the profile are the same as in the corresponding default profile (see Defining Default Profiles above).

The initial "allowed/disallowed" settings in the user-library-specific profile are taken from the corresponding library-specific profile; if no such profile exists, they are taken from the corresponding user-specific profile.

Modifying/Displaying a User-Library-Specific Utility Profile

To modify or display a library-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "MX" or "DX" respectively. A window will be displayed in which you enter the ID of the user whose user-library-specific profile(s) are to be listed; also, you can enter a start value for the list of profiles to be displayed. Then a list of existing user-library-specific profiles of the specified user for the selected utility will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired profile with "MO" (modify) or "DX" (display) respectively. The profile will be displayed for modification/display.

The options in the profile are the same as in the corresponding default profile (see Defining Default Profiles above).

Deleting a User-Library-Specific Utility Profile

To delete a user-library-specific utility profile, you mark the desired utility on the Utility Maintenance selection list with "MX". A window will be displayed in which you enter the ID of the user whose user-library-specific profile(s) are to be listed; also, you can enter a start value for the list of profiles to be displayed. Then a list of existing user-library-specific profiles of the specified user for the selected utility will be displayed.

On that list, you mark the desired profile with "DE". A window will be displayed in which you confirm the deletion.

Protecting Natural Development Server Applications

This section describes how you can control access to base applications and compound applications with Natural Security. It covers the following topics:

- Application Protection
 - Special Considerations
 - How to Invoke Application Maintenance
 - Components of an Application Profile
 - Selecting an Application for Processing
 - Adding a New Application Profile
 - Copying an Application Profile
 - Modifying an Application Profile
 - Renaming an Application Profile
 - Deleting an Application Profile
 - Displaying an Application Profile
 - Linking Users to Applications
-

Application Protection

This section covers the following topics:

- What are Applications?
- Prerequisites
- General Concept
- Naming Conventions
- Hierarchies of Application Profiles
- Information for Predict Users
- Defining and Activating Application Security

What are Applications?

Applications are *base applications* and *compound applications* which are created and maintained in the Natural Studio's application workspace and used in conjunction with the Natural Development Server.

For information on base and compound applications, please refer to the Natural Development Server documentation.

Unless otherwise indicated, the term "application" within the Natural Security documentation comprises both base applications and compound applications.

Prerequisites

For the protection of applications on the development server file, the following prerequisites must be met:

- The Natural Development Server must be installed at your site (as described in the Natural Development Server installation documentation).
- A development server file must be defined; this definition is part of the Natural Development Server installation procedure.
- The FSEC system file used must contain the application profiles "* Base Application *" and "* Compound

Application *"; these two profiles are automatically created and stored on the FSEC file by both the Natural Security installation procedure and the Natural Development Server installation procedure.

- The current Natural Security session must use a development server file.

On Natural Security screens, applications are only visible if the Natural Development Server is installed and the current session uses a development server file.

General Concept

The protection of applications is only relevant in conjunction with the Natural Development Server. If you do not use the Natural Development Server, you need not concern yourself with application protection in Natural Security.

If you use the Natural Development Server, you should use Natural Security to control the access to applications on the development server file.

By protecting an application, you control users' access to it; that is, you control whether users are allowed to read, add, modify or delete the application in the Natural Studio's application workspace. These access rights are defined in an application security profile.

Application protection in Natural Security only affects access to an application as such; it has no effect on access to the Natural programming objects contained in the libraries that may be part of the application.

Naming Conventions

Application IDs in Natural Security must conform to the application naming conventions which are defined in the Natural Development Server. Natural Security will check if they do. For information on these naming conventions, please refer to the Natural Development Server documentation.

Hierarchies of Application Profiles

The installation procedures of both Natural Security and the Natural Development Server automatically create two application security profiles with the application IDs "* Base Application *" and "* Compound Application *". These are the basic security profiles which apply to all base applications and compound applications respectively for which no individual security profiles are defined. The default access settings in the two basic profiles are all preset to "N"; you can change them to suit your requirements.

The Natural Development Server naming conventions allow you to set up a hierarchy of application profiles: If you create an application security profile for an application whose ID is a certain character string, the profile will apply to all applications whose IDs begin with that character string. Thus, you need not define a profile for every single application.

For example, if you defined a base application security profile with the ID "A", it would apply to all base applications whose IDs begin with "A" (such as "APPLX", "AA01", "ABC", "ADE" etc.). A profile with the ID "ABC" would in turn apply to, for example, "ABCA", "ABCXYZ" etc.

Asterisk as Default Access

Such a profile hierarchy can be employed to allow/disallow at different levels the individual default access methods (see below) to be defined within the application profiles. If a default access in an application profile is set to "*", the setting in the profile at the next higher level applies for this access method.

For example, let us assume the following base application profiles with the following settings:

ID	Settings in Profile			
	Read=Y	Add=Y	Modify=Y	Delete=N
* Base Application *	Read=Y	Add=Y	Modify=Y	Delete=N
A	Read=*	Add=N	Modify=*	Delete=Y
ABC	Read=*	Add=*	Modify=N	Delete=*
ABCXYZ	Read=*	Add=N	Modify=*	Delete=N

The following settings would apply:

ID	Applicable Settings	Explanation
ABCXYZ	Read is allowed. Add is not allowed. Modify is not allowed. Delete is not allowed.	The Read setting is determined by "* Base Application *". The Add setting is determined by "ABCXYZ" itself. The Modify setting is determined at the next higher level by "ABC". The Delete setting is determined by ABCXYZ itself.
ABC	Read is allowed. Add is not allowed. Modify is not allowed. Delete is allowed.	The Read setting is determined by "* Base Application *". The Add setting is determined at the next higher level by "A". The Modify setting is determined by "ABC" itself. The Delete setting is determined at the next higher level by "A".
ADE	Read is allowed. Add is not allowed. Modify is allowed. Delete is allowed.	As no security profile is defined for this application, its settings are determined by the application defined at the next higher level, that is, by "A".
A	Read is allowed. Add is not allowed. Modify is allowed. Delete is allowed.	The Read setting is determined by "* Base Application *". The Add setting is determined by "A" itself. The Modify setting is determined by "* Base Application *". The Delete setting is determined by "A" itself.

Information for Predict Users

The hierarchy described above corresponds to the hierarchy you can set up for Predict documentation objects. In fact, base and compound applications correspond to Predict documentation objects of type "system", subtypes "-B" and "-O" respectively (as described in the Predict documentation).

Base and compound applications also appear as Predict documentation objects types "SY-B" and "SY-O" in Natural Security's subsystem for external objects. It is therefore possible to maintain application profiles either in the external objects maintenance subsystem or in the application maintenance subsystem. However, it is strongly recommended that you only use the application subsystem - but not the external objects subsystem - to maintain application profiles.

Defining and Activating Application Security

Within Natural Security, application protection is performed in two steps:

- the definition of the necessary security profiles and links,
- the activation of these profiles and links.

Definition of Security Profiles and Links

To control access to an application, you would define the following security profiles and links:

- You have to create a security profile for the **library SYSDIC** (if not already defined). In the library security profile of SYSDIC, the option "People-protected" must be set to "Y".
- You create a **security profile for the application**, and in the profile define the access rights that are to apply to most users.
- You create a **group security profile** for all users who are to have access to applications, and add all these users to the group.
- You **link** the group **to the library SYSDIC**. Without this link, access to applications is not possible. The ID of this link is also used as session profile ID by the Natural Development Server.
- If some users are to have restricted or extended access rights, you create another group security profile for each group of users who are to have the same access rights, and add the users to the groups accordingly.
- You then **link** these other groups **to the application**, defining their access rights in the link profile.
- You also have to **link** each of these groups **to the library SYSDIC**.

Activation of Security Profiles and Links

To activate the application profiles (and related link profiles) and the protection mechanisms involved, you set the option "Activate Security for Development Server File" to "Y" (Administrator Services Menu > Set General Options). As long as this option is set to "N", applications on the development server file are not protected against unauthorized access. It is recommended that you first create all the application profiles, group profiles and links you need, before you set this option to "Y".

Special Considerations

Functions MOVE, COPY and DELETE

The Natural Studio functions MOVE, COPY and DELETE are executed using the GUI functions Cut, Copy, Paste, Drag and Drop. However, their use in a remote development environment can only be restricted via the security profile of the Natural SYSMAIN utility.

Commands LIST DDM and EDIT DDM

In the Natural Studio, the command EDIT DDM is also available from within a user-created library. This means that it is not necessary to expand the DDM node in the tree view to be able to edit a specific DDM. However, the use of the commands LIST DDM and EDIT DDM in a remote development environment can only be restricted via the security profile of the Natural SYSDDM utility.

How to Invoke Application Maintenance

Application maintenance can only be invoked if the prerequisites described above are met.

1. On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance".
A window will be displayed.
2. In the window, mark object type "Application" with a character or with the cursor.

The Application Maintenance selection list will be displayed. From this selection list, you invoke all application maintenance functions as described below.

Components of an Application Profile

Components of a Base Application Profile

The following type of screen is the "basic" profile screen which appears when you invoke one of the functions Add, Copy, Modify, Display for a base application security profile:

```

14:15:03                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                2001-08-15
                        -Modify Base Application -

                                Modified .. 2001-08-15 by SAG

Base Application ... XYZ-BASE

----- Default Access -----
Y R Read
* A Add
Y M Modify
N D Delete

                                Library  DBID  FNR  NSC
                                LIBA     123   10   N
                                LIBB     123   11   P
                                LIBC     345   33   P

Additional Options ... N

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp MaLib Flip                                Canc

```

The individual items you may define as part of a base application security profile are explained below.

Field	Explanation
Default Access	<p>In this column, you can allow/disallow access methods for the application object in the Natural Development Server. The possible access methods are:</p> <p>R Read the application. A Add the application. M Modify the application. D Delete the application.</p> <p>For each access method, you can specify one of the following values:</p> <p>Y The access method is allowed. N The access method is not allowed. * The setting in the application security profile at the next higher level in the hierarchy (see Hierarchies of Application Profiles above) determines whether the access method is allowed or not.</p> <p>If you set Read access to "N", Add, Modify and Delete access will automatically be set to "N". If you set Add, Modify or Delete access to "Y", Read access will automatically be set to "Y". If you set Read access to "*", you can only set Add, Modify and Delete access to "N" or "*", but not to "Y".</p> <p>The access methods allowed/disallowed in the application profile will apply to all users for which no special access is defined via a link (for information on links, see Linking Users to Applications below).</p>
Library (display only)	<p>The IDs of the libraries which are linked to the application in the Natural Development Server.</p> <p>Up to 10 libraries are displayed at a time. If there are more, you can use PF7 and PF8 to scroll within the list of libraries.</p> <p>By pressing PF5, you can invoke Library Maintenance for the libraries displayed. (When you invoke Library Maintenance from here, it comprises only those functions relevant for the maintenance of the libraries linked to the application, and you can only maintain these libraries.)</p>
DBID / FNR (display only)	<p>For each library, the database ID and file number of its FUSER system file are displayed.</p>
NSC (display only)	<p>For each library, information on its Natural Security definition is displayed:</p> <p><i>blank</i> The library is not defined in Natural Security.</p> <p>N The library is defined as not protected (that is, neither people-protected nor terminal-protected).</p> <p>P The library is defined as people-protected or terminal-protected, or both.</p> <p>U The library is a user's private library.</p> <p>? The library is defined in Natural Security, but the FUSER DBID/FNR specification in the library security profile does not match the one defined in the application security profile.</p>

Components of a Compound Application Profile

The following type of screen is the "basic" profile screen which appears when you invoke one of the functions Add, Copy, Modify, Display for a compound application security profile:

```

14:16:05                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                2001-08-15
                        - Modify Compound Application -

                                Modified .. 2001-08-15 by SAG

Compound Application ... XYZ-COMP

----- Default Access -----
Y R Read                Base Application                NSC
* A Add                 ABCB0012-BASE-APPL                X
Y M Modify              ABCB0015-BASE-APPL
N D Delete              ABCB0019A01                X

Additional Options ... N

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10---PF11---PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp MaBAp Flip                                Canc

```

The individual items you may define as part of a compound application security profile are explained below.

Field	Explanation
Default Access	<p>In this column, you can allow/disallow access methods for the application object in the Natural Development Server. The possible access methods are:</p> <p>R Read the application. A Add the application. M Modify the application. D Delete the application.</p> <p>For each access method, you can specify one of the following values:</p> <p>Y The access method is allowed. N The access method is not allowed. * The setting in the application security profile at the next higher level in the hierarchy (see Hierarchies of Application Profiles above) determines whether the access method is allowed or not.</p> <p>If you set Read access to "N", Add, Modify and Delete access will automatically be set to "N". If you set Add, Modify or Delete access to "Y", Read access will automatically be set to "Y". If you set Read access to "*", you can only set Add, Modify and Delete access to "N" or "*", but not to "Y".</p> <p>The access methods allowed/disallowed in the application profile will apply to all users for which no special access is defined via a link (for information on links, see Linking Users to Applications below).</p>
Base Application (display only)	<p>The IDs of the base applications which are contained in the compound application.</p> <p>Up to 10 base applications are displayed at a time. If there are more, you can use PF7 and PF8 to scroll within the list of base applications.</p> <p>By pressing PF5, you can invoke Application Maintenance for these base applications.</p>
NSC (display only)	<p>For each base application, it is indicated whether or not it is defined in Natural Security:</p> <p>X The base application is defined in Natural Security. <i>blank</i> The base application is not defined in Natural Security.</p>

Additional Options

If you mark the field "Additional Options" on the basic security profile screen with "Y", a window will be displayed from which you can select the following options:

- Maintenance Information
- Security Notes
- Owners

The options for which something has already been specified or defined are marked with a plus sign (+).

You can select one or more items from the window by marking them with any character. For each item selected, an additional window will be displayed:

Additional Option	Explanation
Maintenance Information (display only)	<p>The following information is displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the date and time when the security profile was created, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who created it, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the creation; ● the date and time when the security profile was last modified, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who made the last modification, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the modification.
Security Notes	You may enter your notes on the security profile.
Owners	<p>You may enter up to eight IDs of ADMINISTRATORS. Only the ADMINISTRATORS specified here will be allowed to maintain the security profile.</p> <p>If no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may maintain the security profile.</p> <p>For each owner, the number of co-owners whose countersignatures will be required for maintenance permission may optionally be specified in the field after the ID.</p> <p>For an explanation of owners and co-owners, see the section Countersignatures.</p>

Selecting an Application for Processing

When you invoke the Application Maintenance subsystem, a list of all application profiles that have been defined to Natural Security will be displayed.

If you do not wish to get a list of all existing application profiles, but would like only certain applications to be listed, you may use the Start Value and Type/Status options as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance". A window will be displayed. In the window, mark object type "Application" with a character or with the cursor (and, if desired, enter a start value and/or application type). The Application Maintenance selection list will be displayed:

```

14:49:01                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                2001-08-15
                        - Application Maintenance -

Co Application                Type Status Access  Message
-----
___ * Base Application *      Base  NApp RAM
___ A                        Base  Defi * *D
___ ABC                      Base  Defi ** *
___ ABCB0014-BASE-APPL      Base  Defi RAMD
___ ABCB0015-BASE-APPL      Base  NApp RA
___ ABCB0016-BASE-APPL      Base  Defi RAMD
___ ABCB0017-BASE-APPL      Base  NApp RAM
___ ABCXYZ                   Base  Defi * *
___ ABCXYZ1                  Base  Defi RA
___ ABCXYZ2                   Base  Defi R***
___ * Compound Application *  Comp  NApp R
___ COMP                     Comp  Defi RAMD
___ COMP-APPLIC              Comp  Defi R**
___ COMP-APPLIC-DEP         Comp  Defi RAM*

Command ==>
Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
Help      Exit      Flip -      +      Canc
    
```

For each application, the application ID, Type ("Base" or "Comp"(ound)), Status and Default Access Definition are displayed.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

Status as Selection Criterion

If you wish to list only certain applications, you can specify one of the following selection criteria in the Status field above the list (possible abbreviations are underlined):

<i>blank</i>	All application security profiles - regardless of whether or not a corresponding application exists.
<u>ALL</u>	All applications - regardless of whether or not a corresponding security profile has been defined.
<u>DEFI</u>	Defined; that is, applications for which security profiles have been defined.
<u>UNDF</u>	Undefined; that is, applications for which no security profiles have been defined.
<u>NAPP</u>	No application; that is, application security profiles for which no corresponding applications exist.

The default is *blank*; that is, all application security profiles will be listed.

Selecting a Function

The following application maintenance functions are available (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
<u>A</u>D	Add application
<u>C</u>O	Copy application
<u>M</u>O	Modify application
<u>R</u>E	Rename application
<u>D</u>E	Delete application
<u>D</u>I	Display application
<u>L</u>U	Link users to application

To invoke a function for an application, mark the application with the appropriate function code in column "Co".

You may select various objects for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several applications on the screen with a function code. For each application marked, the appropriate processing screen will be displayed. You may then perform for one application after another the selected functions.

Adding a New Application Profile

To define an application to Natural Security, you create a security profile for it. You can create security profiles for:

- applications which already exist on the development server file,
- applications which do not yet exist on the development server file.

Adding a Profile for an Existing Application

On the Application Maintenance selection list, enter "UNDF" in the field "Status".

Only those applications which have not yet been defined to Natural Security will be listed. (The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.) The application IDs displayed are those by which the applications are defined in on the development server file.

On the list, mark the application for which you wish to create a security profile with function code "AD". The Add Application screen will be displayed.

The individual items you may define on this screen and any additional windows that may be part of an application security profile are described under Components of an Application Profile above.

When you add a new application profile, the owners specified in your own user security profile will automatically be copied into the application security profile you are creating.

Adding a Profile for a Non-Existing Application

It is possible to create application security profiles before the corresponding applications themselves are defined on the development server file.

In the command line of the Application Maintenance selection list, enter the command **ADD**.

A window will be displayed. In this window, enter an *ID* for the application. This ID must conform to the naming conventions for applications which are defined in the Natural Development Server. Natural Security will check if the ID conforms to these naming conventions. Depending on where you have invoked the window from, you may also have to specify the desired type of application (base or compound).

After you have entered a valid ID (and specified the application type), the Add Application screen will be displayed.

The individual items you may define on this screen and any additional windows that may be part of an application security profile are described under Components of an Application Profile above.

When you add a new application profile, the owners specified in your own user security profile will automatically be copied into the application security profile you are creating.

Copying an Application Profile

The Copy Application function is used to define a new application to Natural Security by creating a security profile which is identical to an already existing application security profile.

What is Copied?

All components of the existing security profile will be copied into the new security profile - except the owners (these will be copied from your own user security profile into the new application security profile you are creating).

Any *links* from users to the existing application will *not* be copied.

How to Copy

On the Maintenance selection list, mark the application whose security profile you wish to duplicate with function code "CO".

A window will be displayed. In the window, enter the ID of the new application. The ID must conform to Natural Development Server naming conventions.

After you have entered a valid ID, the new security profile will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile you may define or modify are described under Components of an Application Profile above.

Modifying an Application Profile

The Modify Application function is used to change an existing application security profile.

On the Application Maintenance selection list, you mark the application whose security profile you wish to change with function code "MO". The security profile of the selected application will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile you may define or modify are described under Components of an Application Profile above.

Renaming an Application Profile

The Rename Application function allows you to change the application ID of an existing application security profile.

On the Application Maintenance selection list, you mark the application whose ID you wish to change with function code "RE". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a new ID for the application profile.

The ID must conform to Natural Development Server naming conventions.

When you rename an application security profile, the application itself will not be renamed.

Deleting an Application Profile

The Delete Application function is used to delete an existing application security profile.

On the Application Maintenance selection list, you mark the application whose profile you wish to delete with function code "DE". A window will be displayed.

- If you have invoked the Delete Application function and should then decide against deleting the given application security profile, you may leave the Delete Application window by pressing ENTER without having typed in anything.
- If you wish to delete the given application security profile, enter the application's ID in the window to confirm the deletion.

When you delete an application profile, all existing links to the application profile will also be deleted.

When you delete an application security profile, the application itself will not be deleted. The application ID will remain in the Application Maintenance selection list with the Status set to "UNDF" (undefined).

If you mark more than one application with "DE", a window will appear in which you are asked whether you wish to confirm the deletion of each application security profile with entering the application's ID, or whether all applications selected for deletion are to be deleted without this individual confirmation. Be careful not to delete an application accidentally.

Note:

If an application is deleted in the Natural Development Server, the corresponding Natural Security application profile will not be deleted, but its Status will be set to "NAPP" (no application).

Displaying an Application Profile

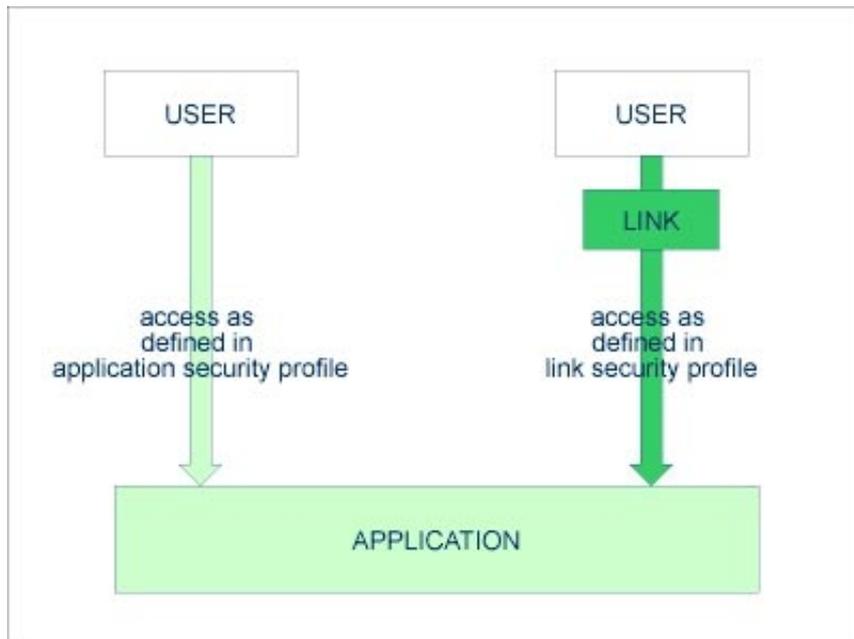
The Display Application function is used to display an existing application security profile.

On the Application Maintenance selection list, you mark the application whose security profile you wish to view with function code "DI". The security profile of the selected application will be displayed.

The individual components of the security profile are explained under Components of an Application Profile above.

Linking Users to Applications

The access methods allowed/disallowed in an application security profile apply to all users who are not linked to the application. If you wish to allow an individual user more or less access methods, you can *link* the user to the application and in the link's security profile define which access methods are to be available for this particular user. This means that by using links you may define for different users different access rights to the same application.



Only users of types "Administrator", "Person" and "Group" can be linked to an application. Administrators and Persons can be linked to an application either directly or via a Group. "Members" and "Terminals" can be linked to an application only via a Group; that is, they must be assigned to a Group, and the Group be linked to the application.

There are two functions available to establish and maintain links between users and applications:

- To link *one user* to *various applications*, use the function "Link user to applications" (which is invoked from the User Maintenance selection list).
- To link *various users* to *one application*, use the function "Link users to application" (which is invoked from the Application Maintenance selection list).

Both functions are described below.

Linking a Single User to Applications

The function "Link user to applications" is used to link one user to one or more applications.

On the User Maintenance selection list, you mark the user you wish to link with function code "LA".

A window will be displayed. In this window, you can select the type of applications (base, compound, or both) to which you wish to link the user. If you select base application or compound application in the window, you can also specify a Start Value (as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security) for the list of applications to be displayed.

Then, the Link User To Applications selection list will be displayed, showing the list of applications.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the list, you mark the applications to which you wish to link the user.

In the "Co" column, you may mark each application with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
LK	Link - The user may use the application with a special security profile to be defined for the link; the link profile will take precedence over the application profile (see below).
CL	Cancel - An existing link will be cancelled.
<u>DI</u>	Display application - The application security profile will be displayed.
<u>DL</u>	Display link - The link security profile will be displayed.

You can mark one or more applications on the screen with a function code. For each object marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect between the user and each application.

Creating a Link Security Profile

If you mark an application with "LK", you may define the security profile for this link on the screen which will be displayed. The default settings which will appear in the link security profile are taken from the security profile of the application.

The items you may define as part of a link security profile correspond with the items you may define as part of an application security profile (see Components of an Application Profile above).

Instead of allowing/disallowing the access methods in the link security profile, you can also enter/delete the corresponding letters (R, A, M, D) in the appropriate positions in the Access column of the Link User To Applications selection list.

Moreover, you have the option to set "Activation Dates" in the link security profile; these are in analogy to the Activation Dates in a user security profile (as explained under Components of a User Profile in the section User Maintenance).

Modifying a Link Security Profile

To modify an existing link security profile, you mark the respective application with "LK" again on the Link User To Applications screen to invoke the link security profile screen.

Linking Multiple Users to an Application

The function "Link users to application" is used to link one or more users to one application.

On the Application Maintenance selection list, you mark the application to which you wish to link users with code "LU".

A window will be displayed, in which you can enter a Start Value (as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security) for the list of users to be displayed.

Then, the Link Users To Application selection list will be displayed, showing the list of users.

The list includes all users of types "Group", "Administrator" and "Person".

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the list, you mark the users you wish to be linked to the application.

In the "Co" column, you may mark each user with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
LK	Link - The user may use the application with a special security profile to be defined for the link; the link profile will take precedence over the application profile (see below).
CL	Cancel - An existing link will be cancelled.
DI	Display user - The user security profile will be displayed.
DL	Display link - The link security profile will be displayed.

You can mark one or more users on the screen with a function code. For each user marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect between each user and the application.

Creating a Link Security Profile

If you mark a user with "LK", you may define the security profile for this link on the screen which will be displayed. The default settings which will appear in the link security profile are taken from the security profile of the application.

The items you may define as part of a link security profile correspond with the items you may define as part of an application security profile (see Components of an Application Profile above).

Instead of allowing/disallowing the access methods in the link security profile, you can also enter/delete the corresponding letters (R, A, M, D) in the appropriate positions in the Access column of the Link Users To Application selection list.

Moreover, you have the option to set "Activation Dates" in the link security profile; these are in analogy to the Activation Dates in a user security profile (as explained under Components of a User Profile in the section User Maintenance).

Modifying a Link Security Profile

To modify an existing link security profile, you mark the respective user with "LK" again on the Link Users To Application screen to invoke the link security profile screen.

Protecting External Objects

This section covers the following topics:

- Types of External Objects
 - How to Invoke Maintenance for External Objects
 - Components of an External Object's Security Profile
 - IDs for External Objects
 - Adding a New External Object
 - Selecting Existing External Objects for Processing
 - Copying an External Object
 - Modifying an External Object
 - Renaming an External Object
 - Deleting an External Object
 - Displaying an External Object
 - Linking Users to External Objects
-

Types of External Objects

With Natural Security, you can control the use of various types of objects used by Predict and other products.

The term *external objects* used in this documentation comprises all the object types listed below.

Predict Objects

The following are Predict object types (they are described in the Predict documentation):

- documentation objects (*PRD-Docu-Object) (PO)
- external objects (*PRD-Ext-Object) (PE)
- functions (*PRD-Function) (PF)
- 3GL libraries (*PRD-3GL-Library) (PL)

The two-letter codes in parentheses are the corresponding object-type codes as used by some Natural Security functions.



For documentation objects of types "base application" and "compound application" (SY-B and SY-O), it is strongly recommended that instead of Natural Security's subsystem for external objects you use the application maintenance subsystem; see the section Protecting Natural Development Server Applications.

Other Objects

The following types of objects are used by various other products (they are described in the corresponding product documentation):

- batch jobs (JB)
- datasets (DS)
- nodes (ND)
- operations (OP)
- printers (PR)

- volume serials (VS)
- VTAM applications (VT)

The two-letter codes in parentheses are the corresponding object-type codes as used by some Natural Security functions.

How to Invoke Maintenance for External Objects

1. On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance".
A window will be displayed.
2. In the window, mark one type of external object with a character or with the cursor.
The Maintenance selection list for the selected object type will be displayed. From this selection list, you invoke all maintenance functions as described below.

Components of an External Object's Security Profile

The following type of screen is the "basic" security profile screen for an external object, which appears when you invoke one of the functions Add, Copy, Modify, Display for an external object's security profile:

```

11:31:46                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                2001-07-13
                        - Modify Dataset -

                                                Modified .. 2001-07-12 by SAG

Dataset ..... XYZ.SYS.SOURCE

----- Default Access -----
N I Info
N R Read
N A Alter
N D Delete

Additional Options ... N

Enter-PF13--PF14--PF15--PF16--PF17--PF18--PF19--PF20--PF21--PF22--PF23--PF24---
      Refr          Menu

```

This screen varies slightly from object type to object type.

The individual items you may define as part of an external object's security profile are explained below.

Default Access

In this column, you can allow/disallow general access methods for the external object. The possible access methods differ from object type to object type, as shown below:

Access to Predict Documentation Objects, External Objects and 3GL Libraries:	
R	Read
A	Add
M	Modify
D	Delete
Access to Predict Functions:	
E	Execute
Access to Batch Jobs:	
I	Display
S	Submit
A	Alter
D	Delete
Access to Datasets:	
I	Info
R	Read
A	Alter
D	Delete
Access to Nodes, Printers, VTAM Applications:	
U	Use
Access to Operations:	
P	Passive
A	Active
Access to Volume Serials:	
I	Info
C	Allocate
A	Alter
D	Delete

The individual access methods are the same as those described in the corresponding product documentation.

Mark with "Y" the access methods that are to be allowed; mark with "N" the access methods that are not to be allowed.

The access methods allowed/disallowed here will apply to all users for which no special access is defined via a link (for information on links, see Linking Users to External Objects below).

Additional Options

If you mark the field "Additional Options" on the basic security profile screen with "Y", a window will be displayed from which you can select the following options:

- Maintenance Information
- Security Notes
- Owners

The options for which something has already been specified or defined are marked with a plus sign (+).

You can select one or more items from the window by marking them with any character. For each item selected, an additional window will be displayed:

Additional Option	Explanation
Maintenance Information (display only)	The following information is displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● the date and time when the security profile was created, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who created it, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the creation; ● the date and time when the security profile was last modified, the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who made the last modification, and (if applicable) the IDs of the co-owners who countersigned for the modification.
Security Notes	You may enter your notes on the security profile.
Owners	You may enter up to eight IDs of ADMINISTRATORs. Only the ADMINISTRATORs specified here will be allowed to maintain the security profile. If no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may maintain the security profile. For each owner, the number of co-owners whose countersignatures will be required for maintenance permission may optionally be specified in the field after the ID. For an explanation of owners and co-owners, see the section Countersignatures.

IDs for External Objects

IDs are used by Natural Security to identify external objects and their security profiles. The ID of an external object must be unique amongst all IDs of objects of the same type defined to Natural Security.

The length of the IDs and other naming conventions that may apply to external objects differ from object type to object type; please refer to the respective product documentation for information.

Asterisk Notation

For the ID of an external object, you can also use asterisk notation: if you create a security profile for an external object and choose as ID a character string followed by an asterisk, the security profile will apply to all objects of that type whose IDs begin with that character string. For single objects (or ranges of objects) within such a range you may still define individual security profiles.

For example, you can create a security profile for a batch job with ID "ADAX", which will apply to batch job ADAX; moreover, you can create a security profile for a batch job with ID "ADA*", which will apply to all other batch jobs whose IDs begin with "ADA"; further, you can create a security profile for a batch job with ID "A*", which will apply to all other batch jobs whose IDs begin with "A"; and, you can also create a security profile for a batch job with ID "*", which will apply to all other batch jobs for which no individual security profiles are defined.

Adding a New External Object

The Add External Object function is used to define external objects to Natural Security, that is, create security profiles for them.

In the command line of the external object Maintenance selection list, enter the command **ADD**.

A window will be displayed. In this window, enter an *ID* for the object.

The Add screen for the specified object type will be displayed. On this screen, you may define a security profile for the external object.

The individual items you may define on this screen and any additional windows that may be part of an external object's security profile are described under Components of an External Object's Security Profile above.

When you add a new external object, the owners specified in your own user security profile will automatically be copied into the external object's security profile you are creating.

Selecting Existing External Objects for Processing

When you invoke the Maintenance subsystem for an external object, a list of all external objects of this type for which a security profile exists will be displayed.

If you do not wish to get a list of all existing external objects but would like only certain external objects to be listed, you may use the Start Value option as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance". A window will be displayed. In the window, mark one type of external object with a character or with the cursor (and, if desired, enter a start value). The selection list for the selected object type will be displayed; for example:

```

13:11:23                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                2001-08-13
                        - Dataset Maintenance -

Co Dataset                                     Message
-----
CO XYZ.S
CO XYZ.SYS

Command ==>
Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help           Exit           Flip -      +                       Canc
    
```

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

The following maintenance functions are available for external objects (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
<u>CO</u>	Copy
<u>MO</u>	Modify
<u>RE</u>	Rename
<u>DE</u>	Delete
<u>DI</u>	Display
<u>LU</u>	Link user

The individual functions are described below.

To invoke a specific function for an external object, mark the object with the appropriate function code in column "Co".

You may select various objects for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several objects on the screen with a function code. For each object marked, the appropriate processing screen will be displayed. You may then perform for one object after another the selected functions.

Copying an External Object

The Copy function is used to define a new external object to Natural Security by creating a security profile which is identical to an already existing external object's security profile.

What is Copied?

All components of the existing security profile will be copied into the new security profile - except the owners (these will be copied from your own user security profile into the new security profile you are creating).

Any links that exist to the existing external object will *not* be copied.

How to Copy

On the Maintenance selection list, mark the external object whose security profile you wish to duplicate with function code "CO".

A window will be displayed. In the window, enter the ID of the new external object.

The Copy screen for the external object will be displayed showing the new security profile.

This screen and any additional windows that may be part of an external object's security profile as well as the individual items you may define or modify are described under Components of an External Object's Security Profile above.

Modifying an External Object

The Modify function is used to change an existing external object's security profile.

On the Maintenance selection list, you mark the external object whose security profile you wish to change with function code "MO". The Modify screen for the external object will be displayed.

This screen and any additional windows that may be part of an external object's security profile as well as the individual items you may define or modify are described under Components of an External Object's Security Profile above.

Renaming an External Object

The Rename function allows you to change the ID of an existing external object's security profile.

On the Maintenance selection list, you mark the external object whose ID you wish to change with function code "RE". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a new ID for the external object.

Deleting an External Object

The Delete function is used to delete an existing external object's security profile.

On the Maintenance selection list, you mark the external object you wish to delete with function code "DE". A window will be displayed.

- If you have invoked the Delete function and should then decide against deleting the given external object's security profile, you may leave the Delete window by pressing ENTER without having typed in anything.
- If you wish to delete the given external object's security profile, enter the object's ID in the window to confirm the deletion.

When you delete an external object, all existing links to the external object will also be deleted.

If you mark more than one external object with "DE", a window will appear in which you are asked whether you wish to confirm the deletion of each external object's security profile with entering the object's ID, or whether all external objects selected for deletion are to be deleted without this individual confirmation. Be careful not to

delete an external object accidentally.

Displaying an External Object

The Display function is used to display an existing external object's security profile.

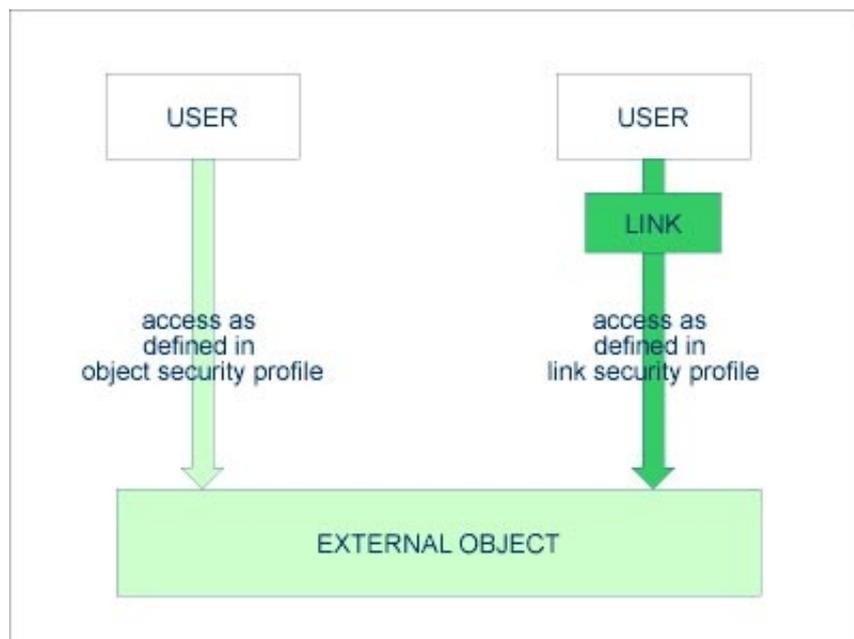
On the Maintenance selection list, you mark the external object whose security profile you wish to view with function code "DI". The Display screen for the external object will be displayed.

The items displayed on this screen and any additional windows that may be part of a external object's security profile are explained under Components of an External Object's Security Profile above.

Linking Users to External Objects

The access methods allowed/disallowed in an external object's security profile apply to all users who are not linked to the external object.

If you wish to allow an individual user more or less access methods, you can *link* the user to the external object and in the link's security profile define which access methods are to be available for this particular user. This means that by using links you may define for different users different access rights to the same external object.



Only users of types "Administrator", "Person" and "Group" can be linked to an external object. Administrators and Persons can be linked to an external object either directly or via a Group. "Members" and "Terminals" can be linked to an external object only via a Group; that is, they must be assigned to a Group, and the Group be linked to the external object.

There are two functions available to establish and maintain links between users and external objects:

- To link *one user* to *various external objects*, use the function "Link user to external objects" (which is invoked from the User Maintenance selection list).
- To link *various users* to *one external object*, use the function "Link users to external object" (which is invoked from the Maintenance selection list of that type of external object).

Both functions are described below.

Linking a Single User to External Objects

The function "Link user to external objects" is used to link one user to one or more external objects.

On the User Maintenance selection list, you mark the user you wish to link with function code "LO".

A window will be displayed. In this window, you mark with the cursor or with a character the type of external object to which you wish to link the user. In the window, you can also specify a Start Value (as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security) for the list of external objects to be displayed.

Then, the Link User To External Objects selection list will be displayed, showing the list of objects. For example:

```

16:04:48                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                2001-08-13
                        - Link User to Dataset -

User ID .... AD          User Name .... ARTHUR DENT
                        Access
Co Dataset              IRAD      Message
-----
XYZ.S                 I_____
XYZ.SYS              I_A_____

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help      Exit      Flip  -      +      Canc
Command ==>
    
```

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the list, you mark the external objects to which you wish to link the user.

In the "Co" column, you may mark each object with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
LK	Link - The user may use the external object with a special security profile to be defined for the link; the link profile will take precedence over the external object's profile (see below).
CL	Cancel - An existing link will be cancelled.
<u>D</u>I	Display object - The object's security profile will be displayed.
DL	Display link - The link security profile will be displayed.

You can mark one or more objects on the screen with a function code. For each object marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect between the user and each object.

Creating a Link Security Profile

If you mark an external object with "LK", you may define the security profile for this link on the screen which will be displayed. The default settings which will appear in the link security profile are taken from the security profile of the external object.

The items you may define as part of a link security profile correspond with the items you may define as part of an external object's security profile (see Components of an External Object's Security Profile above).

Instead of allowing/disallowing the access methods in the link security profile, you can also enter/delete the corresponding letter in the appropriate position in the Access column of the Link User To External Objects selection list.

Moreover, you have the option to set "Activation Dates" in the link security profile; these are in analogy to the Activation Dates in a user security profile (as explained under Components of a User Profile in the section User Maintenance).

Modifying a Link Security Profile

To modify an existing link security profile, you mark the respective external object with "LK" again on the Link User To External Objects screen to invoke the link security profile screen.

Linking Multiple Users to an External Object

The function "Link users to external object" is used to link one or more users to one external object.

On the Maintenance selection list of an external object, you mark the object to which you wish to link users with code "LU".

A window will be displayed, in which you can enter a Start Value (as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security) for the list of users to be displayed.

Then, the Link Users To External Object selection list will be displayed. For example:

```

13:14:38                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                2001-08-13
                        - Link Users to Dataset -

Dataset ..... ABC.S
Default Access .... I

Co User ID  User Name                Access      Message
-----
___ AD      ARTHUR DENT                A I_A_____
___ ADMIN1  BUNGALOW BILL              A I_AD_____
___ ADMIN2  VALENTIN DE LA SIERRA      P I_____
___ ADMIN3  ELLEN RIPLEY                A I_____
___ ADMIN4  TOM TOOMEY                  A IRA_____
___ ADMIN5  CARLO CAMPANATI            A __AD_____
___ ADSON   BRIAN OF NAZARETH          A I_____
___ AGROUP  A GROUP                      G I__D_____
___ HC      HAGBARD CELINE              P I_____
___ KG      KARL GLOGAUER                P IR_____
___ MW      MIA WALLACE                  A I_____
___ NH      NATHANIEL HAWKEYE           A __D_____

Command ==> _____
Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help           Exit           Flip -      +           Canc
    
```

The list includes all users of types "Group", "Administrator" and "Person".

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the list, you may mark the users you wish to be linked to the external object.

In the "Co" column, you may mark each user with one of the following function codes (possible code abbreviations are underlined>):

Code	Function
LK	Link - The user may use the external object with a special security profile to be defined for the link; the link profile will take precedence over the external object's profile (see below).
CL	Cancel - An existing link will be cancelled.
DI	Display user - The user security profile will be displayed.
DL	Display link - The link security profile will be displayed.

You can mark one or more users on the screen with a function code. For each user marked, the selected functions will then be executed one after another. When processing is completed, a message will be displayed stating the link situation now in effect between the user and each object.

Creating a Link Security Profile

If you mark a user with "LK", you may define the security profile for this link on the screen which will be displayed. The default settings which will appear in the link security profile are taken from the security profile of the external object.

The items you may define as part of a link security profile correspond with the items you may define as part of an external object's security profile (see Components of an External Object's Security Profile above).

Instead of allowing/disallowing the access methods in the link security profile, you can also enter/delete the corresponding letter in the appropriate position in the Access column of the Link Users To External Object selection list.

Moreover, you have the option to set "Activation Dates" in the link security profile; these are in analogy to the Activation Dates in a user security profile (as explained under Components of a User Profile in the section User Maintenance).

Modifying a Link Security Profile

To modify an existing link security profile, you mark the respective user/object with "LK" again on the Link Users To External Object screen to invoke the link security profile screen.

Mailboxes

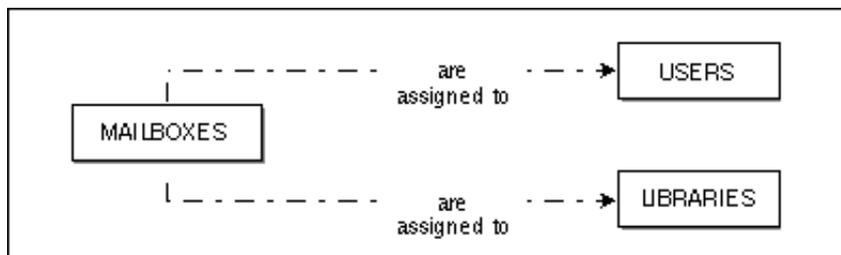
This section covers the following topics:

- What is a Mailbox?
 - How to Invoke Mailbox Maintenance
 - Components of a Mailbox Profile
 - Broadcasting a Message
 - Receiving a Message
 - Mailbox ID
 - Adding a New Mailbox
 - Selecting Existing Mailboxes for Processing
 - Copying a Mailbox
 - Modifying a Mailbox
 - Renaming a Mailbox
 - Deleting a Mailbox
 - Displaying a Mailbox
-

What is a Mailbox?

A mailbox is an information screen which may be used to broadcast messages to Natural users. It can best be described as a notice board.

Mailboxes may be assigned to users and/or to libraries.



When a user logs on to a library, the mailboxes assigned to his or her security profile, as well as the mailboxes assigned to the security profile of the library, will be displayed to the user.

You create a mailbox by defining it to Natural Security, that is, creating a security profile for it.

How to Invoke Mailbox Maintenance

1. On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance".
A window will be displayed.
2. In the window, mark object type "Mailbox" with a character or with the cursor.
The Mailbox Maintenance selection list will be displayed. From this selection list, you invoke all mailbox maintenance functions as described below.

Components of a Mailbox Profile

The following screen shows an example of a mailbox security profile:

```

13:00:00                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                1999-08-13
                        - Modify Mailbox -

Mailbox ID: MAIL2112                Created: 1999-08-10 by: SAG
Mailb.Name: MAILBOX YYZ                Modified: 1999-08-12 by: SAG
Last mailed on .. 1999-08-11 at: 12:00:58 by: IW
Valid from ..... 1999-12-31 to 2499-12-31

----- Mailbox Security Notes ----- Mailers-   -- Owners --
-----
AD_____
HW_____
IW_____
-----

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp          Flip                               Canc
    
```

The individual components of a mailbox security profile are explained below.

The following items of information are entered by Natural Security:

Mailbox ID	The ID by which you have defined the mailbox to Natural Security.
Created/by	The date when the security profile was created, and the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who created the security profile.
Modified/by	The date when the security profile was last modified, and the ID of the ADMINISTRATOR who made the latest modification.
Last mailed on/at/by	The date, time and user ID of the latest modification of the mailbox message screen and/or "Valid from/to" dates.
Valid from/to	The period of time in which the mailbox is displayed to users when they log on. These dates can be set on the mailbox message screen, not on the security profile screen.

You may specify the following items as part of a mailbox security profile:

Mailbox Name	In this field, you may specify a name for the mailbox; this name may be up to 32 characters long.
Mailbox Security Notes	In these lines, you may enter your notes on the security profile.
Mailers	You may enter up to 10 IDs of users (of any user type) who may use the mailbox to broadcast messages, that is, modify the contents of the mailbox message screen. If no mailers are specified, any user may use the mailbox.
Owners	You may enter up to 8 IDs of ADMINISTRATORS. Only the ADMINISTRATORS specified here will be allowed to maintain the mailbox security profile and assign the mailbox to users/libraries. If no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may do so. For each owner, the number of co-owners whose countersignatures will be required for maintenance/assignment permission may optionally be specified in the field after the ID. For an explanation of owners and co-owners, see the section Countersignatures.

If you press PF4 on the Add Mailbox screen, the message screen of the mailbox will be displayed:

```

13:00:27                *** Mailbox Message Screen ***                1999-08-13

Mailbox ID ... MAIL2112          Valid from 1998-12-01 to 2499-12-31
Last mailed on 1999-08-11 at 12:00:58 by IW
+-----+
I THERE IS UNREST IN THE FOREST                                I
I THERE IS TROUBLE WITH THE TREES                              I
I FOR THE MAPLES WANT MORE SUNLIGHT                            I
I AND THE OAKS IGNORE THEIR PLEAS                              I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
I                                                                I
+-----+
    
```

Valid from/to	<p>These dates may be set if a message is only relevant for a certain period of time, and the mailbox is therefore only to be displayed to users at logon within this period of time.</p> <p>If a "from" date is specified, the mailbox will only be displayed beginning on this day.</p> <p>If a "to" date is specified, the mailbox will no longer be displayed after this day.</p> <p>Any mailer (or owner) may specify these dates.</p> <p>The format in which the dates have to be specified depend on the setting of the Natural profile parameter DTFORM.</p>
----------------------	--

Broadcasting a Message

Everybody specified as a *mailer* in a mailbox security profile may use the mailbox. If a group is specified as a mailer, every user contained in the group may use the mailbox. If no mailer is specified, any user may use the mailbox.

A mailer can invoke a mailbox with the Natural system command MAIL (provided that the mailer is logged on to a library for which command mode is allowed).

Examples:

MAIL FUGAZI	This command will invoke the message screen of mailbox FUGAZI.
MAIL ?	A list of all mailboxes the mailer may use will be displayed, and the mailer may then select a mailbox from the list.

Once the desired mailbox is invoked, the mailer may enter a message, add text to or delete text from an existing message, or change the "Valid from/to" dates.

Mailers have access only to the message screen of a mailbox, not to the mailbox security profile. Owners may also broadcast messages, as they have access to a mailbox message screen via the security profile. However, it is only mailers who may use the MAIL command.

Receiving a Message

Once a mailbox is defined, it may be assigned to users and libraries by entering the mailbox ID in the "Mailboxes" window (under "Additional Options") of the respective user security profiles and library security profiles.

Owner logic applies to the assigning of mailboxes; that is, if owners are specified in the mailbox profile (see Components of a Mailbox Profile above), only these owners will be allowed to assign the mailbox to a user or library.

Mailboxes will be displayed to a user immediately after every successful logon to a library. The following mailboxes will be displayed to the user in the following order:

- all mailboxes assigned to the user;
- all mailboxes assigned to the library;
- all mailboxes assigned to the group via which the user is logged on (if the library is people-protected and the user is linked via a group);
- all mailboxes assigned to the user's terminal and all mailboxes assigned to the group via which the terminal is linked (if the library is terminal-protected ("Terminal-protected" set to "A")).

If one mailbox would have to be displayed more than once to a user (for example, if the same mailbox is assigned to the user's own security profile as well as to that of the group via which he/she is linked), it will only be displayed once; a repeated display will be suppressed.

The display of mailboxes cannot be suppressed by the user.

A mailbox will not be displayed

- if it is empty, that is, if it contains nothing but blanks;
- if the "Valid from" date has not yet been reached, or the "Valid to" date has passed.

Mailbox ID

Mailbox IDs are used by Natural Security to identify mailboxes and their security profiles.

A mailbox ID may be up to 8 characters long, it must start with an alphabetical character, and it must be unique amongst all mailbox IDs defined to Natural Security.

Before you start defining mailboxes, it may be advisable to conceive a logical system of creating mailbox IDs, as this will help you to identify mailboxes easier when doing Natural Security maintenance.

Mailbox for Initial Logon

The mailbox ID "1INITIAL" serves a special purpose: if you define a mailbox with this mailbox ID, it will be displayed to every user after a successful initial logon to Natural.

The mailbox 1INITIAL need not be assigned to any user or library.

Adding a New Mailbox

The Add Mailbox function is used to define new mailboxes to Natural Security, that is, create mailbox security profiles.

To add a new mailbox security profile, enter the command **ADD** in the command line of the Mailbox Maintenance selection list.

A window will be displayed. In this window, you enter a *mailbox ID*.

The Add Mailbox screen will be displayed. On this screen you may define a security profile for the mailbox. The items you may define or specify are explained under Components of a Mailbox Profile above.

When you add a new mailbox, the owners specified in your own user security profile will automatically be copied into the mailbox security profile you are creating.

Selecting Existing Mailboxes for Processing

When you invoke the Mailbox Maintenance subsystem, a list of all mailboxes that have been defined to Natural Security will be displayed.

If you do not wish to get a list of all existing mailboxes but would like only certain mailboxes to be listed, you may use the Start Value option as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

On the Main Menu, enter code "M" for "Maintenance".

A window will be displayed. In the window, mark object type "Mailbox" with a character or with the cursor (and, if desired, enter a start value).

The Mailbox Maintenance selection list will be displayed:

```

11:35:19                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                1999-08-13
                        - Mailbox Maintenance -

Co Mailbox ID Mailbox Name                                     Message
-----
__ MAILAZ      MAILAZ
__ MAILB      MAILBOX B
__ MAILF      MAIL-FINANCE
__ MAILLP     PLEASE MR POSTMAN
__ MAILLP1    CHAIN MAIL
__ MAILLP2
__ MAILSAG    MAILBOX FOR SAG
__ MAILTM
__ MAIL1
__ MAIL10     NEWS AT 10
__ MAIL11
__ MAIL12
__ MAIL13
__ MAIL14
__ MAIL2112   MAILBOX YYZ

Command ===>
Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help      Exit      Flip  -      +      Canc

```

For each mailbox, its ID and name are displayed.

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

The following mailbox maintenance functions are available (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function
<u>CO</u>	Copy mailbox
<u>MO</u>	Modify mailbox
<u>RE</u>	Rename mailbox
<u>DE</u>	Delete mailbox
<u>DI</u>	Display mailbox

To invoke a specific function for a mailbox, you mark the mailbox with the appropriate function code in column "Co".

You may select various mailboxes for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several mailboxes on the screen with a function code. For each mailbox marked, the appropriate processing screen will be displayed. You may then perform for one mailbox after another the selected functions.

Copying a Mailbox

The Copy Mailbox function is used to define a new mailbox to Natural Security by creating a security profile which is identical to an existing mailbox security profile.

What is Copied?

All components you defined for the existing security profile will be copied into the new mailbox security profile, except the owners (these will be copied from your own user security profile into the new mailbox security profile you are creating).

How to Copy

On the Mailbox Maintenance selection list, mark the mailbox whose security profile you wish to duplicate with function code "CO".

A window will be displayed. In this window, enter the ID of the "new" mailbox.

The Copy Mailbox screen will be displayed showing the new security profile.

The components of the security profile you may define or modify are explained under Components of a Mailbox Profile above.

Modifying a Mailbox

The Modify Mailbox function is used to change an existing mailbox security profile.

On the Mailbox Maintenance selection list, mark the mailbox whose security profile you wish to change with function code "MO".

The Modify Mailbox screen will be displayed. On this screen you may modify the mailbox's security profile. The items you may define or modify are explained under Components of a Mailbox Profile above.

Renaming a Mailbox

The Rename Mailbox function allows you to change the mailbox ID of an existing mailbox security profile.

On the Mailbox Maintenance selection list, you mark the mailbox whose ID you wish to change with function code "RE". A window will be displayed in which you can enter a new ID for the mailbox (and, optionally, change its name).

Deleting a Mailbox

The Delete Mailbox function is used to delete an existing mailbox.

On the Mailbox Maintenance selection list, mark the mailbox you wish to delete with function code "DE". A window will be displayed.

- If you have invoked the Delete Mailbox function and should then decide against deleting the given mailbox, you may leave the Delete Mailbox window by pressing ENTER without having typed in anything.
- If you wish to delete the given mailbox, enter the mailbox ID in the window to confirm the deletion.

When you delete a mailbox, the mailbox ID will simultaneously be deleted from the security profiles of the users and libraries it has been assigned to.

If you mark more than one mailbox with "DE", a window will appear in which you are asked whether you wish to confirm the deletion of each mailbox with entering the mailbox ID, or whether all mailboxes selected for deletion are to be deleted without this individual confirmation. Be careful not to delete a mailbox accidentally.

Displaying a Mailbox

The Display Mailbox function is used to view an existing mailbox security profile.

On the Mailbox Maintenance selection list, mark the mailbox you wish to be displayed with function code "DI".

The Display Mailbox screen will be displayed, showing the security profile of the selected mailbox.

The individual components of the security profile are explained under Components of a Mailbox Profile above.

To view the message screen of the mailbox, press PF4 on the Display Mailbox screen.

Retrieval

This section covers the following topics:

- Purpose of Retrieval Functions
- How to Invoke Retrieval Functions
- Cross-Reference User
- Cross-Reference Library
- Cross-Reference File
- Cross-Reference Utility
- Cross-Reference Application
- Cross-Reference External Object
- Cross-Reference Mailbox
- Retrieval in Batch Mode - Program RETRIEVE

Purpose of Retrieval Functions

The Retrieval subsystem of Natural Security may be used to retrieve information on the objects defined to Natural Security and on the existing relationships between these objects. It allows you to review the existing security profile definitions and their effects.

With Retrieval, you cannot do any Natural Security maintenance; you may only look at things.

How to Invoke Retrieval Functions

On the Main Menu, you enter code "R" for "Retrieval".

A window will be displayed. In the window, you mark an object type with a character or with the cursor (and, if you wish, use the Start Value and Type/Status options as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security).

The selection list for that object type will be displayed.

The selection list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security).

From the selection list, you can invoke the following retrieval functions (possible code abbreviations are underlined):

Code	Function	Explanation
<u>DI</u>	Display	For each object type, the Display function is identical to the maintenance function of the same name as described in the appropriate maintenance section.
<u>XR</u>	Cross-Reference	The Cross-Reference functions for each object type are described in this section.

To invoke a specific function for an object, you mark the object with the appropriate function code in column "Co" on the selection list.

You may select various objects for various functions at the same time; that is, you can mark several objects on the screen with a function code. For each object marked, the appropriate processing screen will be displayed. You may then perform for one object after another the selected functions.

Cross-Reference User

This function allows you to obtain the following information:

- a list of all base and compound applications to which a user is linked;
- a list of all libraries available to a user;
- a list of all DDMs/files a user's private library is linked to;
- a list of all groups a user belongs to;
- a list of all users contained in a given group;
- a list of all security profiles owned by a user;
- a list of all DDM/file security profiles where the user is "DDM Modifier";
- a list of all external objects to which a user is linked;
- the user-specific functional security specifications for the command processors for which functional security is defined for the user.
- a list of all utility profiles defined for a user.

On the User Retrieval selection list, you mark the user whose security profile you wish to cross-reference with function code "XR".

A window will be displayed, in which you can select one or more of the following items by marking them with any character:

Applications	Displays a list of all base and compound applications to which the user is linked.
Libraries	Displays a list of all libraries available to the user.
Linked Libraries	Displays a list of all libraries to which the user is linked (directly or via a group).
DDMs / Files	Displays a list of all DDMs to which the user's private library is linked.
Groups / Members	Displays a list of all groups to which the user belongs; if the user is a group, a list of all users contained in that group will be displayed.
Owned Objects	Displays a list of all security profiles of which the user is an owner.
DDM Modifier	Displays a list of all DDM/file security profiles in which the user is specified as "DDM Modifier".
External Objects	Displays a list of all external objects to which the user is linked.
Command Processors	Displays the functional security specifications for each command processor for which functional security is defined for the user.
Utilities	Displays a list of all user-specific and user-library specific utility profiles defined for the user.

Cross-Reference Library

This function allows you to obtain the following information:

- a list of all DDMs a library is linked to;
- a list of all users linked to a library;
- the functional security specifications for the command processors in the library.
- a list of all utility profiles defined for a library.

On the Library Retrieval selection list, you mark the library whose security profile you wish to cross-reference with function code "XR".

A window will be displayed, in which you can select one or more of the following items by marking them with any character:

DDMs / Files	Displays a list of all DDMs to which the library is linked.
Users	Displays a list of all users who are linked to the library.
Command Processors	Displays the functional security specifications for each command processor in the library for which functional security is defined.
Utilities	Displays a list of all library-specific and user-library specific utility profiles defined for the library.

Cross-Reference File

This function is only available on mainframe computers. It allows you to ascertain which libraries (and private libraries) are linked to a file.

On the File Retrieval selection list, you mark the file whose security profile you wish to cross-reference with function code "XR".

A window will be displayed, in which you can select one or both of the following items by marking them with any character:

Libraries	Displays a list of all libraries that are linked to the file.
Private Libraries	Displays a list of all users whose private libraries are linked to the file.

Cross-Reference Utility

This function allows you to ascertain which utility profiles exist for a utility.

On the Utility Retrieval selection list, you mark the utility whose profiles you wish to cross-reference with function code "XR".

A window will be displayed, in which you can select one or more of the following items by marking them with any character:

Library-Specific Profiles	Displays a list of all library-specific profiles defined for this utility (as well as the utility's default profile).
User-Specific and User-Library-Specific Profiles	Displays a list of all user-specific profiles and user-library-specific profiles defined for this utility.
All Profiles	Displays a list of all user-specific profiles, library-specific profiles and user-library-specific profiles, as well as the default profile defined for this utility.

Cross-Reference Application

This function allows you to ascertain which users are linked to an application.

On the Application Retrieval selection list, you mark the application whose security profile you wish to cross-reference with function code "XR". A list of all users who are linked to the application will be displayed.

Cross-Reference External Object

This function allows you to ascertain which users are linked to an external object.

On the Retrieval selection list for a type of external object, you mark the object whose security profile you wish to cross-reference with function code "XR". A list of all users who are linked to the external object will be displayed.

Cross-Reference Mailbox

This function allows you to ascertain which users and which libraries a mailbox is assigned to.

On the Mailbox Retrieval selection list, you mark the mailbox whose security profile you wish to cross-reference with function code "XR".

A window will be displayed, in which you can select one or both of the following items by marking them with any character:

Libraries	Displays a list of all libraries to which the mailbox is assigned.
Users	Displays a list of all users to which the mailbox is assigned.



Retrieval in Batch Mode - Program RETRIEVE

You can obtain all retrieval information for all objects of a certain object type at the same time. For this purpose, the Natural Security library SYSSEC provides the program RETRIEVE. This program performs the Display and Cross-Reference functions for all objects of a certain object type; that is, it will output Display and Cross-Reference information for all selected objects.

The following information can be obtained:

- Output 1: a list of all selected objects, with basic information about each object;
- Output 2: display of security profiles of the selected objects;
- Output 3: cross-reference information about the selected objects;
- Output 4: display of security profiles of special links between users and libraries.

Various input parameters allow you to restrict the functions to a certain range of objects, and to determine the sequence in which the information is to be output. The input parameters for RETRIEVE are:

1.	Object type: US for users, LI for libraries, FI for files (on mainframes only), MA for mailboxes, or the corresponding code for a type of external object.
2.	User type (for object type US): A = Administrator, P = Person, M = Member, G = Group, T = Terminal, B = Batch user. File status (for object type FI): PUBL = Public, ACCE = Access, PRIV = Private.
3.	Start value: An object name (optionally with asterisk notation) to obtain information on a certain range of objects only.
4/5.	Date from/to: A range of dates to obtain information only on objects created/last modified within a specific period of time.
6.	Function: Determines which information is output, and the output sequence: S Output 1. A Output 1, then Output 2 & 3 for one object, then Output 2 & 3 for the next object, etc. AE Output 1, then Output 2, 3 & 4 for one object, then Output 2, 3 & 4 for the next object, etc. X Output 3. XE Output 3 & 4 for one object, then Output 3 & 4 for the next object, etc. D Output 1, then Output 2 for every object. Z Output 1, then Output 2 for every object, then Output 3 for every object. ZE Output 1, then Output 2 for every object, then Output 3 for every object, then Output 4 for every object.

The program RETRIEVE is primarily intended for use in batch mode. However, by issuing the direct command RETRIEVE, you can also invoke the program online: a menu will be displayed for you to specify the selection options.

Countersignatures

This section covers the following topics:

- Using Owners
 - Using Countersignatures
 - Groups as Owners
 - Groups as Co-Owners
 - User Security Profiles of ADMINISTRATORs
 - Inaccessible Security Profiles
-

Using Owners

The benefit of using *owners* for security profiles is that the work and responsibility of doing Natural Security maintenance may be distributed amongst several ADMINISTRATORs instead of resting in the hands of just one person.

This distribution may be done according to criteria of significance/sensitivity of objects, regional, branch or departmental aspects, or whatever suits your specific Natural environment.

However, the number of ADMINISTRATORs should be kept low and the system by which you assign owners should be clearly structured.

It is also possible to enter a GROUP as an owner. All ADMINISTRATORs contained in the GROUP will then be authorized to maintain the security profile. (As only ADMINISTRATORs may do Natural Security maintenance anyhow, users of other user types contained in the GROUP will not be affected by this.)

Using Countersignatures

It is the Natural Security ADMINISTRATORs who control all users' access rights to libraries. The question may well be asked, "Who controls the ADMINISTRATORs?" The answer is that they can control each other. This may be achieved by the use of *countersignatures*.

A security profile may have up to 8 owners. Without countersignatures, each of these owners may modify, delete, link, or edit the security profile unhindered.

If this is not desired, the countersignatures feature may be used: next to each owner of a security profile you may enter a number (1, 2 or 3); an owner must then obtain this number of countersignatures from other owners of the security profile, before he/she can gain access to the security profile. In this way, an owner cannot execute any alterations without the knowledge and consent of other owners.

Countersignatures are given by the co-owners entering their user *passwords* on the Countersignatures screen; this screen is displayed automatically when a function is invoked that requires countersignatures from co-owners of the security profile concerned.

Note:

If the Lock User Option is active, entering a wrong password on the Countersignatures screen may result in the user who has invoked the screen being locked.

Example of Countersignatures:

In the security profile of user IW the following owners are specified:

```

+-----OWNERS-----+
! User ID ..... IW      !
!                          !
! AD                      !
! HW          + 1        !
! JC          + 2        !
!                          !
!                          !
!                          !
!                          !
!                          !
!-----+

```

Only the three ADMINISTRATORS specified may modify the security profile.

The owner situation is the following:

- Owner AD may modify the security profile unhindered, that is, without having to obtain a countersignature from any of the other owners.
- Owner HW may only modify the security profile with the consent of one of the other owners (this need not be one specific owner but can be any one of the others).
- Owner JC may only modify the security profile with the consent of two, that is, all other owners of the security profile.
- Any other administrators cannot modify the security profile, as they are not owners of the security profile.

Let us imagine that owner HW wishes to modify the security profile of user IW. On the User Maintenance selection list, he marks user "IW" with code "MO". The Countersignatures screen will be invoked:

```

13:10:14                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                1999-08-13
                        - Modify User -

User ID .. IW

      Group ID  User ID  Password  Added  Modified
      - - - - -  - - - - -  - - - - -  - - - - -  - - - - -
1.          AD_____  _____  On: 1999-08-13 1999-08-13
2.          JC_____  _____  13:08:15 13:09:10
3.          _____  _____  By: AD      AD
4.          _____  _____
5.          _____  _____
6.          _____  _____
7.          _____  _____
8.          _____  _____

SYSSEC5588: 1 authorized owner must enter his/her password.

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help      Exit                                  Canc
    
```

All other owners of the security profile are listed on the screen. One of them must enter his/her password.

If none of the other owners are available in person, they may communicate (for example, AD may reveal his password to HW, which HW may then enter on the Countersignatures screen; AD should then change his password immediately afterwards).

Once the correct password of one co-owner (either AD or JC) has been entered, the Modify User screen with the security profile of user IW will be invoked for administrator HW to execute the intended modifications.

Groups as Owners

If GROUPs are specified as owners, the following cases may occur:

- An ADMINISTRATOR is an owner of a security profile and also contained in a GROUP which is an owner of the security profile. In this case the countersignature requirements specified for the ADMINISTRATOR him-/herself apply.
- An ADMINISTRATOR is not an owner of a security profile him-/herself, but is contained in two or more GROUPs which are owners of the security profile. In this case the countersignature requirements specified for the GROUP with the fewest countersignatures apply.

If two or more GROUPs have equally few countersignatures, their alphabetical order is decisive.

Note:

In the above cases an ADMINISTRATOR may be an owner more than once. This implies that the ADMINISTRATOR may provide him-/herself with one or more of the countersignatures required.

Groups as Co-Owners

If a GROUP appears as a co-owner on the Countersignatures screen, any one of the ADMINISTRATORs contained in the GROUP may countersign.

To select one ADMINISTRATOR from a GROUP, enter a "?" in the User ID field next to the Group ID on the Countersignatures screen. A list of all ADMINISTRATORs contained in the GROUP will be displayed, from which you may select the one whose countersignature you wish to obtain.

Please note that a GROUP counts as one co-owner, and one co-owner cannot provide more than one countersignature. If, for example, two countersignatures are required, these may not both be obtained from members of the same GROUP.

However, one ADMINISTRATOR may countersign more than once if he/she appears more than once as a co-owner on the Countersignatures screen, i.e. in his/her own right and/or as a member of one or more GROUPs.

User Security Profiles of ADMINISTRATORS

When an ADMINISTRATOR wishes to create any new security profiles (that is, to use an Add or Copy function), the owner situation of his/her own security profile applies:

- If the ADMINISTRATOR's security profile has no owners assigned, he/she may create new security profiles unhindered.
- If the ADMINISTRATOR's security profile has owners assigned but these do not include the ADMINISTRATOR, he/she must obtain the countersignatures of all owners of his/her security profile, before he/she may create any new security profiles.
- If the ADMINISTRATOR is one of the owners of his/her own security profile and has a number of co-owners specified, the ADMINISTRATOR must obtain this number of countersignatures from other owners of his/her security profile, before he/she may create any new security profiles.



Owners and countersignatures should be assigned with the utmost care, as it may be difficult, if not impossible, to cancel an undesired owner/co-owner configuration. "Experimenting" with this feature can also result in your locking yourself out from access to a security profile.

Inaccessible Security Profiles

If a security profile has become completely inaccessible - that is, if an owner/co-owner configuration has been set up which does not allow any ADMINISTRATOR to access the security profile - the Natural system command INPL can be used as a last resort to recover the security profile.

You enter the INPL command; then, on the INPL menu, you enter function code "R"; and in the subsequent window, you enter an "O". In the next window, you enter the object type and the ID of the security profile to be recovered. This deletes all owner entries from the security profile.

Functional Security

This section covers the following topics:

- Command Processors
 - Functional Security for a Command Processor
 - Allowing/Disallowing Keywords
 - How to Define Functional Security for a Library
 - How to Define Functional Security for a User
 - Functional Security for Library SYSSEC
-

Command Processors

Command processors are used to control the way in which commands/functions are executed in a library. They are created with the Natural utility SYSNCP. In a command processor, you define commands - that is, keywords and combinations of keywords - and the actions to be performed in response to these commands being entered by the users.

Functional Security for a Command Processor

Natural Security allows you to define *functional security* for each command processor in a library: you can determine which of the keywords and keyword combinations defined in the processor are to be allowed or not allowed in the library, thus restricting the availability of certain functions within the library. Moreover, you can define user-specific functional security; that is, you can make different functions available for different users of the same command processor in a library.

This is done via the "Functional Security" options in the security profiles of libraries and users, as described in detail in this section. The functional security defined for a command processor in a library profile applies to all users of the command processor in that library. In addition, in a user profile you can define different functional security for an individual user of a command processor in a library, which then takes precedence over the specifications in the library profile.

Status of a Command Processor

In Natural Security, a command processor can have the following status:

Undefined	The command processor has been created with SYSNCP, but no functional security is defined for it.
Defined	The command processor has been created with SYSNCP and functional security is defined for it.
Modified	<p>The command processor has been modified with SYSNCP after functional security was defined for it.</p> <p>In this case, you may have to update the functional security for the command processor (by marking the field "Functional Security Defined" with "UP" and then adjusting the security specifications).</p> <p>Note: If a command processor is modified with SYSNCP, it has to be recataloged in order for the modifications to be reflected in Natural Security.</p>
Unresolved	<p>The command processor has been deleted with SYSNCP, but functional security is still defined for it.</p> <p>In this case, you should also delete the functional security for the command processor (by marking the field "Functional Security Defined" with "DE").</p>

Allowing/Disallowing Keywords

By default, all keywords defined in a command processor are disallowed, which means that none of the commands defined in the processor can be executed.

If you wish to make only relatively few functions available, you can leave this default unchanged so that generally all keywords are disallowed, and you can then allow the use of individual keywords and keyword combinations (commands). If you wish to make most functions available and only restrict the use of relatively few functions, you can change the default so that generally all keywords are allowed and you can then disallow the use of individual keywords and keyword combinations.

How to Define Functional Security for a Library

If you mark the option "Functional Security" in the Additional Options window of a library security profile (see "Components of a Library Profile" in the section Library Maintenance), the Functional Security window will be displayed:

Library ID	XYZLIB__
Command Processor	_____
__ Functional security defined ..	
__ Keyword default	
__ Keyword exceptions	
__ Command exceptions	
Type of command exceptions ...	

In this window, you can define functional security for any command processor that has been created in that library.

In the Command Processor field of the window, you enter the name of the processor you wish to define for the library.

If you do not know the name of the processor you want, enter an asterisk (*) in the Command Processor field: a list of all processors that are contained in that library will be displayed; from the list, you select a processor by marking it with any character or the cursor.

By default, no functional security is defined for a command processor: the Keyword Default is set to "Disallowed", and no Keyword Exceptions or Command Exceptions are defined; which means that none of the commands defined in the processor can be executed.

Functional Security Defined

This field may take the following values:

No	This indicates that the default settings for Keyword Default and Keyword/Command Exceptions apply.
Yes	This indicates that some of the default settings have been changed.
???	This indicates that the status of the command processor is either "modified" or "unresolved" (see Status of a Command Processor above).

Keyword Default

This field may take the following values:

Disallowed	By default, all keywords specified in the processor are disallowed (and you may allow individual keywords and keyword combinations via Keyword Exceptions and Command Exceptions).
Allowed	By default, all keywords specified in the processor are allowed (and you may disallow individual keywords and keyword combinations via Keyword Exceptions and Command Exceptions).

To change the value from "Disallowed" to "Allowed", or vice versa, mark the Keyword Default input field with any character.

You can only change the Keyword Default if neither Keyword Exceptions nor Command Exceptions are defined; so, if necessary, you must reset the allowed/disallowed status of all Command Exceptions and Keyword Exceptions to their default settings (as explained below) before you can change the Keyword Default.

Keyword Exceptions

This field may take the following values:

No	This indicates that the Keyword Default applies to all keywords; that is, all keywords are either allowed or disallowed.
Yes	If the Keyword Default is set to "Disallowed", this indicates that individual keywords are allowed; if the Keyword Default is set to "Allowed", this indicates that individual keywords are disallowed.

By default, all keywords are either allowed or disallowed, depending on the setting of the Keyword Default.

To change this default status for individual keywords, mark the Keyword Exceptions input field with any character(s) - except "DE". Depending on the Keyword Default, either the Allow Keywords screen or the Disallow Keywords screen will be displayed, listing all keywords that have been defined in the processor:

```

14:18:03                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                1999-08-13
                        - Disallow Keywords -

Library .. SYSSEC          Command Processor .. NSCCMD01

Keyword      Type      A/D
-----
ACCESS      Action    A
ADD          Action    A
ADDMULTIPLE Action    A
ADMIN        Action    A
CONVERT      Action    A
COPY         Action    D
DELETE       Action    D
DISPLAY      Action    A
DUMMY1       Action    A
DUMMY2       Action    A
DUMMY3       Action    A
DUMMY4       Action    A
EDIT         Action    A

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp          Flip                               Canc
    
```

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

In the "A/D" column, mark the keywords to be disallowed with "D" and those to be allowed with "A".

Any status that is different from the Keyword Default status will be displayed intensified.

To reset the disallowed/allow status of all keywords to the Keyword Default setting, mark the Keyword Exceptions input field with "DE" (delete). A window will be displayed, in which you enter "Y" to confirm the deletion.

Command Exceptions

This field may take the following values:

No	This indicates that all initial default settings apply.
Yes	This indicates that individual default settings have been changed.

If any of the keywords that make up a command is disallowed, the command will, by default, be disallowed. If all of the keywords that make up a command are allowed, the command will, by default, be allowed.

To change this default status for individual commands, mark the Command Exceptions input field with any character(s) - except "DE". The Allow/Disallow Commands screen will be displayed, listing all commands that have been defined in the processor:

```

14:19:13                *** NATURAL SECURITY ***                1999-08-13
                        - Allow/Disallow Commands -

Library .. SYSSEC      Command Processor .. NSCCMD01

Action      Object          (unused)      A/D
-----
ACCESS     DATASET          A
ACCESS     JOB              A
ACCESS     NODE             A
ACCESS     OPERATIONS      A
ACCESS     PRINTER         A
ACCESS     VOLUME_SERIAL  A
ACCESS     VTAM_APPLICATION A
ADD        DATASET          A
ADD        FILE            A
ADD        JOB           A
ADD        LIBRARY       A
ADD        MAILBOX      A
ADD        NODE         A

Enter-PF1---PF2---PF3---PF4---PF5---PF6---PF7---PF8---PF9---PF10--PF11--PF12---
      Help  PrevM Exit  AddOp      Flip                                Canc
    
```

The list can be scrolled as described in the section Finding Your Way In Natural Security.

In the "A/D" column, mark the commands to be disallowed with "D" and those to be allowed with "A".

Any status that is different from the default status will be displayed intensified.

To reset the status of all commands to their default allowed/disallowed settings, mark the Command Exceptions input field with "DE" (delete). A window will be displayed, in which you enter "Y" to confirm the deletion.

Type of Command Exceptions

If any Command Exceptions are defined, this field may take the following values:

Allowed	This indicates that one or more of the commands that were initially disallowed have been allowed.
Disallowed	This indicates that one or more of the commands that were initially allowed have been disallowed.
Allowed/ Disallowed	This indicates that one or more of the initially disallowed commands have been allowed and also one or more of the initially allowed commands have been disallowed.

How to Define Functional Security for a User

Generally, the functional security defined for a command processor in a library security profile applies to all users of the processor in that library. If you wish to define different functional security for an individual user, you may do so in the user's security profile. The specifications in the user profile will then take precedence over the specifications in the library profile.

By default, the functional security specifications as defined for the processor in the library security profile apply.

To change any of these specifications for an individual user, mark the option "Functional Security" in the Additional Options window of the user's security profile (see "Components of a User Profile" in the section User Maintenance); the Functional Security window will be displayed:

```

User ID ..... ABC
Library ID ..... _____
Command Processor ..... _____

__ Functional security defined ..
__ Keyword default .....
__ Keyword exceptions .....
__ Command exceptions .....
Type of command exceptions ...
    
```

In this window, you can define user-specific functional security for a command processor in a library.

In the Library ID field of the window, enter the ID of the library in which the processor is contained, and in the Command Processor field, enter the name of the command processor you wish to define for the user.

Functional Security Defined

This field may contain the following values:

No	This indicates that for this user the functional security as defined for the processor in the library security profile applies.
Yes	This indicates that for this user functional security different from that defined for the processor in the library security profile has been defined.
???	This indicates that the status of the command processor is either "modified" or "unresolved" (see Status of a Command Processor above).

To reset the user-specific specifications to those as defined for the processor in the library profile, mark the Functional Security Defined input field with "DE" (delete). A window will be displayed, in which you enter "Y" to confirm the deletion.

Keyword Default/Keyword Exceptions/Command Exceptions/Type of Command Exceptions

For these fields, the same applies as described under How to Define Functional Security for a Library above.

Functional Security for Library SYSSEC

The command processor NSCCMD01 is provided for the Natural Security library SYSSEC. Natural Security *always* uses this processor for the handling of functions within SYSSEC.

By default, NSCCMD01 is defined with Keyword Default set to "Allowed" and no Keyword Exceptions or Command Exceptions; that is, all Natural Security functions are allowed.

You cannot modify command processor NSCCMD01 itself (as it is only provided in object form); but, if necessary, you may modify the functional security aspects of NSCCMD01 in the library profile of SYSSEC and in the user profiles of Natural Security administrators to control the use of functions within SYSSEC. For example, if you wish a user to only look at security profiles but not modify them, you may disallow for that user all action keywords but "DISPLAY"; or, if you wish a user to only deal with user profiles, but not profiles of any other type of object, you may disallow for that user all object keywords but "USER".

However, it would be useless to create with SYSNCP any other command processor for library SYSSEC, as SYSSEC would ignore any processor other than NSCCMD01.



Do not set the Keyword Default for command processor NSCCMD01 to "Disallowed" - unless you define **immediately** afterwards Keyword Exceptions that allow you to use all the Natural Security functions you need. If you set the Keyword Default for NSCCMD01 to "Disallowed" and then leave the Functional Security window, this will disallow the use of all Natural Security functions; that is, no one will be able to use Natural Security anymore. To make Natural Security accessible again, it would then be necessary to execute an INPL with the RECOVER option.

Private Libraries



The use of private libraries is very restricted, as each private library can only be accessed by one user. Therefore it is recommended *not* to define private libraries.

This section covers the following topics:

- What is a Private Library?
 - Defining Private Libraries
 - Deleting Private Libraries
 - Logon to a Private Library
 - Relationships between Private Libraries and DDMs/Files
-

What is a Private Library?

A user of type ADMINISTRATOR or PERSON may have a personal library. These personal libraries are called *private libraries*.

A private library is directly attached to the respective user. It cannot be used by any other user. Not even a Natural Security administrator has access to a user's private library. (The only way for an ADMINISTRATOR to gain access to a private library is by modifying the user's password in the user's security profile and then logging on to the private library with the user's user ID and the new password.) Thus a private library provides a certain degree of seclusion for the user; and possible misuse of this seclusion is hard to eliminate.

There is no need to create a private library for a user. ("Playing" with programs and testing and the like can also be done in "normal" libraries which may be created for these purposes.)

Defining Private Libraries

To define a private library to Natural Security, first mark the "Private Library" field in the ADMINISTRATOR's or PERSON's security profile with "Y" (on the Add User, Copy User or Modify User screen) (marking this field does not cause any default private library profile to be created). In the Additional Options window, you can then select "Private Library": a Private Library screen will be displayed, which is almost identical to a "normal" library security profile screen. On this screen and the subsequent screens/windows you may define the security profile for the private library.

The ID by which a private library is defined to Natural Security (library ID) is always identical to the respective user ID.

Deleting Private Libraries

To delete a private library, mark the "Private Library" field in the ADMINISTRATOR's or PERSON's security profile with "N". A window will be invoked on which you may confirm the deletion by typing in the library ID.

Depending on the setting of the general option "Deletion of Non-empty Libraries Allowed" (which is described in the section Administrator Services), it may not be possible to delete a private library if it still contains any source or object modules.

Logon to a Private Library

To log on to a private library, a user has to enter on the logon screen his/her user ID in the user ID field *and* in the library ID field (not forgetting the password, of course).

The user may also use the LOGON command with the user ID as the first parameter to log on to his/her private library:

LOGON *user-ID*

If a user who has a private library logs on to Natural without entering a library ID, the private library will be invoked if the user has no default library specified in his/her security profile.

Relationships between Private Libraries and DDMs/Files

Libraries and Files - on Mainframes

As far as their access rights to files are concerned, private libraries are identical to "normal" libraries: a PUBLIC file may be read and updated by any private library; an ACCESS file may be read by any private library; a PRIVATE file cannot be accessed by a private library.

If you wish to link a private library to an ACCESS or PRIVATE file, see Linking Libraries to Files in the section Protecting DDMs On Mainframes. What is said there about libraries also applies to private libraries.

To link a private library, you use the function "Link libraries to file", which is invoked from the File Maintenance selection list. When you use this function to link a private library, enter "U" (=User's private library) instead of "L" (=Library) in the field "Libraries/Private Libraries" in the window in which you can also specify a start value for the list of private libraries.

Libraries and DDMs - on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows

As far as DDMs are concerned, private libraries are identical to "normal" libraries (as described in the section Protecting DDMs On OpenVMS, UNIX And Windows).

However, you invoke DDM maintenance for a private library by marking the respective user with code "MD" on the *User* Maintenance selection list (not the *Library* Maintenance selection list).

Natural Security In Batch Mode

This section covers the following topics:

- General Information on Batch Mode
 - Logon in Batch Mode
 - Batch User Security Profiles
 - Startup Transaction in Batch Mode
 - Mailboxes in Batch Mode
-

General Information on Batch Mode

Before you use Natural Security in batch mode, you should be familiar with the general considerations concerning the use of Natural in batch mode as described in your Natural Operations documentation.

Please also observe the batch-mode particularities of the underlying operating system.

If you want to process a job in batch mode under Natural Security, the Natural system variable *DEVICE must be set to BATCH.

Logon in Batch Mode

When you use Natural Security in batch mode, the logon procedure is started automatically. Input for the LOGON command must be provided as follows:

On mainframes in delimiter mode (IM=D), and on all other platforms:

```
%*  
library-ID,user-ID,password
```

On mainframes in forms mode (IM=F):

```
library-ID user-ID  
%*  
password
```

In forms mode, the *library-ID* must be 8 bytes long; if it is less than 8 characters long, the remaining bytes must be filled with blanks.

The input mode on mainframes is set with the Natural profile parameter IM (which is described in the Natural Reference documentation).

The specification of "%*" will prevent the password from being printed.

If the logon procedure is to be initialized via dynamic parameters, the LOGON command must be specified with the profile parameter STACK as follows:

```
STACK=(LOGON library-ID user-ID password)
```

Note:

Under Windows 98/NT/2000 in batch mode, the map LOGONM1 instead of the dialog box GLOGONM1 is displayed as logon screen.

Password Change in Batch Mode

To change the password in batch mode, input for the LOGON command must be provided as follows:

On mainframes for delimiter mode (IM=D), and on all other platforms:

```
%*
library-ID,user-ID,password,new-password
%*
,,,new-password
```

On mainframes for forms mode (IM=F):

```
library-ID user-ID
%*
password new-password
%*
new-password
```

For forms mode, *library-ID* and *password* must be 8 bytes long; if they are shorter, the remaining bytes must be filled with blanks. The *new-password* in the last line must be preceded by 8 blanks.

Automatic Logon in Batch Mode

If you use automatic logon (Natural profile parameter AUTO=ON) in batch mode, the batch job name will be taken as user ID. This batch job name must be defined as a user to Natural Security. A logon with a user ID other than the batch job name will not be possible.

Batch User Security Profiles

In addition to creating security profiles for users of types "A", "P", "M", "G" and "T", you can also create user security profiles of type "B" (for "batch"). They are created in the same way as other user security profiles (see Adding a New User in the section User Maintenance) You can then enter the user ID of such a batch user in the field "Batch User ID" of a user security profile.

Before a batch user ID can be entered in a user security profile, a security profile for this batch user ID must have been defined.

Several users may share the same batch user ID; that is, the same batch user ID can be entered in the security profiles of several users. Thus, the same conditions of use can apply to several users in batch mode, and these conditions have to be defined only once.

A batch user ID cannot be used for a logon in online mode.

In batch mode, a user logs on with his/her "normal" user ID and password. Natural Security will then use the batch user ID specified in the user's security profile, and the conditions of use defined for that batch user ID will apply.

If no batch user ID is specified in the user's security profile, the "Privileged Groups" specified in the user's security profile will be checked (in order of entry) for a batch user ID. If none of the Privileged Groups has a batch user ID either, the user's own user ID will be used.

A batch user profile cannot be linked directly to a library, it must be linked via a GROUP; that is, it must be contained in a GROUP, and the GROUP be linked to the library.

Startup Transaction in Batch Mode

When you log on to a library in batch, the setting of the switch "Batch execution" in the library security profile determines whether the startup transaction specified in the library security profile will be executed or not. See Transactions under Components of a Library Profile in the section Library Maintenance for details.

Mailboxes in Batch Mode

When you log on in batch mode, mailboxes are not displayed.

Transferring Security Data To Another System File

This section covers the following topics:

- General Information
 - Using SECULD
 - Using SECLOAD
 - Transferring Data to Another Hardware Platform
 - Transferring Data from Version 2.1 on OpenVMS and UNIX
 - Transferring Data from Version 3.1 on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows NT
 - Transferring Data in Batch Mode
-

General Information

This section describes how to transfer Natural Security data from one system file to another. This is only relevant if you use two Natural Security system files.

A Natural Security system file is specified with the Natural profile parameter FSEC (which is described in the Natural Reference documentation).

The library SYSSEC contains two programs for the transfer of Natural Security data from one system file to another - SECULD and SECLOAD:

- SECULD is used to unload data from one system file to a work file.
- SECLOAD is used to load the data from the work file onto the other system file.

The selection of data to be transferred is done with SECULD. SECLOAD will always attempt to transfer the complete work file. However, SECLOAD will check whether the data to be transferred are consistent with the data already stored on the system file. Inconsistent data will not be loaded.

The programs SECULD and SECLOAD you use must both be of the same Natural Security version. Moreover, it is recommended that the latest available version of SECULD and SECLOAD be used.

Using SECULD

To invoke SECULD, you enter the command "SECULD" in the command line of any Natural Security screen. The SECULD menu will be displayed.

To select the type of data to be transferred, you enter one of the following function codes on the SECULD menu:

Function Code	Type of Data to be Unloaded
*	All security data.
D	All security data with deletion (all data will be loaded onto the work file and be deleted from the system file).
O	Objects defined in Natural Security (users, libraries, utility profiles, etc.).
L	Links between users and objects.
F	Links between libraries/private libraries and files (this function is only available on mainframes).
C	Components of library profile (this function is not available on mainframes).
P	Default profiles (user or utility profiles).

In addition to the function code, you can specify the following on the SECULD menu:

Transfer	<p>With this option, you specify to which work file the selected data are to be written:</p> <p>Y The data will be written to Work File 1 in alphanumeric form (this is the default for non-mainframe environments). Work File 1 can be used for any form of transfer supported by SECULD/SECLOAD.</p> <p>N The data will be written to Work File 5 in binary form (this is the default for mainframe environments). Work File 5 can only be used if the data are to be transferred to another system file on the same hardware platform.</p>
Object Type	<p>If you select function code "O", "L" or "P", you also have to specify the type of object/link to be unloaded.</p> <p>If you select function code "C", you also have to specify the type of components (DDM profiles) to be unloaded.</p> <p>For a selection list of possible types, enter a question mark (?) in the Object Type field.</p>
Start Value	<p>You may specify an ID (optionally with asterisk notation) to transfer a certain object or range of objects (not applicable to function codes "*" and "D").</p>
Number	<p>You may specify the number of objects to be transferred (not applicable to function codes "*" and "D").</p>
Date from/to	<p>You may specify two dates to load only objects which were created/last modified in that period of time (not applicable to function code "D").</p>
Work File	<p>You specify the name of the work file to which the data are to be written. If you use Work File 5, the work-file name must end with ".sag".</p> <p>This field is not available on mainframes.</p>
Ty	<p>The type of work file:</p> <p>D Default.</p> <p>N Entire Connection work file.</p> <p>This field is not available on mainframes.</p>

Using SECLOAD

To invoke SECLOAD, you enter the command "SECLOAD" in the command line of any Natural Security screen. You will then be prompted to make the following specifications:

Load NSC Data from Work File 1	<p>Y The data will be read from Work File 1 (this is the default for non-mainframe environments).</p> <p>N The data will be read from Work File 5 (this is the default for mainframe environments).</p> <p>2 The data will be read from Work File 2 (see Transferring Data from Version 2.1 below).</p>
User-Defined Conversion Table	This is the same as the corresponding load option of the SYSTRANS utility (see the section Load, Scan and Restart Load Functions in the Natural SYSTRANS Utility documentation).
Work File	<p>You specify the name of the work file from which the data are to be written.</p> <p>This field is not available on mainframes.</p>
Type of Work File	<p>D Default.</p> <p>N Entire Connection work file.</p> <p>This field is not available on mainframes.</p>

Note:

Data which are inconsistent or which already exist on the target system file will not be loaded. To ascertain why data were not loaded, please refer to the load report.

Transferring Data to Another Hardware Platform

With SECULD and SECLOAD, you can also transfer security data from one hardware platform to another.

To do so, you enter a "Y" in the Transfer field of the SECULD menu.

By pressing PF4, you can then invoke an additional window in which you can specify the following optional parameters:

Target Environment	The operating system (as in the Natural system variable *OPSYS) of the target environment.
Target FSEC DBID/FNR	The database ID and file number of the FSEC system file to which the data are to be transferred. SECLOAD will compare these specifications with the DBID/FNR of the actual FSEC file to which the data are to be loaded: if they are not the same, the data cannot be loaded. In this way, you can prevent an uncontrolled loading of security data. Otherwise anybody who got hold of the work file, could load it anywhere.
Conversion EBCDIC-ASCII	These are the same as the corresponding unload options of the SYSTRANS utility (see the section Unload Functions in the Natural SYSTRANS Utility documentation).
User-Defined Conversion Table	

The data will then be written, in alphanumeric form, to Work File 1, from where they can be loaded with SECLOAD.

Note:

When data are transferred from a mainframe platform to another platform, SECLOAD also checks if library IDs conform to the naming conventions for libraries (as described under the system command LOGON in the Natural Reference documentation).

Transferring Data from Version 2.1 on OpenVMS and UNIX

With SECULD and SECLOAD, you can also transfer security data from Natural Security Version 2.1 to Version 4.1.

This functionality is only available under OpenVMS and UNIX.

Unloading in the Version 2.1 Environment

On the SECULD menu, you enter a "Y" in the Transfer field. By pressing PF4, you can then invoke an additional window in which you can make the same specifications as for the transfer to another hardware platform (see Transferring Data to Another Hardware Platform above).

The data will then be written in alphanumeric form to Work File 1.

Loading in the Version 4.1 Environment

From the above work file, the data can then be loaded with SECLOAD. In the target environment, however, that work file must be assigned as Work File 2, as SECLOAD reads from Work File 2 for the version-to-version transfer.

When you invoke SECLOAD and enter a "2" in the Load From Work File field of the first window to be displayed, another window will be displayed in which you can make various specifications for options that are new with Version 4.1, but did not exist with Version 2.1.

Transferring Data from Version 3.1 on OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows NT

This section only applies under OpenVMS, UNIX and Windows NT.

A transfer of existing Version 3.1 security data to another system file is not necessary, because you can continue to use your existing Version 3.1 FSEC system file to be shared by Natural Security Versions 3.1 and 4.1.

However, should you decide to use a new FSEC file for Version 4.1 and wish to transfer existing Version 3.1 security data to this new file, you unload/load the data using the standard SECULD/SECLOAD transfer procedure by using Work File 1.

Transferring Data in Batch Mode

Examples of SECULD/SECLOAD in Batch Mode on Mainframes

Example jobs for executing SECULD and SECLOAD in batch mode on mainframe computers are shown below.

Example 1 of SECULD Job:

In this example, all users whose IDs begin with "LP" and who were last modified between 1st January and 10th June 1999, and the library TESTLIB will be transferred to the work file CMWKF05.

```
//SECULD JOB DEMO,CLASS= ,MSGCLASS= ,REGION=2048K
//*****
//ULD EXEC PGM=NATBATnn,
// PARM='DBID=10,FNR=5,FSEC=(,8),FDIC=(,9),IM=D,MT=0,MAXCL=0,MADIO=0'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=NATURAL.Vnn.LOAD
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=ADABAS.Vnn.ADALOAD
//DDCARD DD *
ADARUN PROGRAM=USER,SVC=249,DATABASE=10,MODE=MULTI
/*
//CMPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//CMWKF05 DD UNIT=TAPE,VOL=SER=NATSEC,DSN=NSC.ULD,
// DCB=(RECFM=VB,LRECL=4624,BLKSIZE=4628,DEN=3),DISP=(,KEEP)
//CMSYNIN DD *
SYSSEC,DBA,PASSWORD
SECULD
O,N,US,LP*,,1999-01-01,1999-06-10
O,N,LI,TESTLIB,1
.
FIN
/*
```

Example 2 of SECULD Job:

In this example, all users whose IDs begin with "LP" will be transferred to the work file CMWKF01. If the "Transfer" option is specified as "Y", the job must contain a line for additional parameters (see Transferring Data to Another Hardware Platform above). In this example, no additional parameter specifications are made (that is, they are either not specified or specified as "N").

```
//SECULD JOB DEMO,CLASS= ,MSGCLASS= ,REGION=2048K
//*****
//ULD EXEC PGM=NATBATnn,
// PARM='DBID=10,FNR=5,FSEC=( ,8),FDIC=( ,9),IM=D,MT=0,MAXCL=0,MADIO=0'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=NATURAL.Vnn.LOAD
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=ADABAS.Vnn.ADALOAD
//DDCARD DD *
ADARUN PROGRAM=USER,SVC=249,DATABASE=10,MODE=MULTI
/*
//CMPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//CMWKF01 DD UNIT=TAPE,VOL=SER=NATSEC,DSN=NSC.ULD,
// DCB=(RECFM=VB,LRECL=4624,BLKSIZE=4628,DEN=3),DISP=( ,KEEP)
//CMSYNIN DD *
SYSSEC,DBA,PASSWORD
SECULD
O,Y,US,LP*
,,N,N
.
FIN
/*
```

Example 3 of SECULD Job:

In this example, all libraries whose IDs begin with "SF" will be transferred to the work file CMWKF01. The target environment is a PC, and the database ID and file number of the target FSEC system file are 89 and 356.

```
//SECULD JOB DEMO,CLASS= ,MSGCLASS= ,REGION=2048K
//*****
//ULD EXEC PGM=NATBATnn,
// PARM='DBID=10,FNR=5,FSEC=( ,8),FDIC=( ,9),IM=D,MT=0,MAXCL=0,MADIO=0'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=NATURAL.Vnn.LOAD
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=ADABAS.Vnn.ADALOAD
//DDCARD DD *
ADARUN PROGRAM=USER,SVC=249,DATABASE=10,MODE=MULTI
/*
//CMPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//CMWKF01 DD UNIT=TAPE,VOL=SER=NATSEC,DSN=NSC.ULD,
// DCB=(RECFM=VB,LRECL=4624,BLKSIZE=4628,DEN=3),DISP=( ,KEEP)
//CMSYNIN DD *
SYSSEC,DBA,PASSWORD
SECULD
O,Y,LI,SF*
WNT-X86,89,356,N,N
.
FIN
/*
```

Example 1 of SECLOAD Job:

In this example, the data will be read from work file 5 (CMWKF05).

```

//SECLOAD JOB DEMO,MSGCLASS= ,CLASS= ,REGION=2048K
//*****
//LOAD EXEC PGM=NATBATnn,
// PARM='DBID=7,FNR=23,FSEC=( ,24),FDIC=( ,25),EJ=OFF,MT=0,IM=D,MADIO=0,MAXCL=0'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=NATURAL.Vnn.LOAD,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=ADABAS.Vnn.ADALOAD,DISP=SHR
//CMPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//DDCARD DD *
ADARUN PROGRAM=USER,SVC=249,DATABASE=7,MODE=MULTI
/*
//CMWKF05 DD UNIT=TAPE,VOL=SER=NATSEC,DSN=NSC.ULD,DISP=SHR
//CMSYNIN DD *
SYSSEC,DBA,PASSWORD
SECLOAD
N,N
FIN
/*

```

Example 2 of SECLOAD Job:

In this example, the data will be read from work file 1 (CMWKF01).

```

//SECLOAD JOB DEMO,MSGCLASS= ,CLASS= ,REGION=2048K
//*****
//LOAD EXEC PGM=NATBATnn,
// PARM='DBID=7,FNR=23,FSEC=( ,24),FDIC=( ,25),EJ=OFF,MT=0,IM=D,MADIO=0,MAXCL=0'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=NATURAL.Vnn.LOAD,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=ADABAS.Vnn.ADALOAD,DISP=SHR
//CMPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//DDCARD DD *
ADARUN PROGRAM=USER,SVC=249,DATABASE=7,MODE=MULTI
/*
//CMWKF01 DD UNIT=TAPE,VOL=SER=NATSEC,DSN=NSC.ULD,DISP=SHR
//CMSYNIN DD *
SYSSEC,DBA,PASSWORD
SECLOAD
Y,N
FIN
/*

```

User Exits

This section covers the following topics:

- Logon-Related User Exits
 - SECNOTE - User Exit for Security Notes
 - Other User Exits
-

Logon-Related User Exits

Three logon-related user exits are available:

- LOGONEX1
- LOGONEX2
- LOGONEX3

LOGONEX1, LOGONEX2, and LOGONEX3 are Natural subprograms; their sources are available in the library SYSSEC, their object modules are stored in the library SYSLIB.

When you modify the sources, please take care to secure them appropriately so as to prevent them from being overwritten by the original user exits when Natural Security is installed again. To use one of these user exits, you copy its source code from the library SYSSEC into one of your own libraries, modify it to suit your requirements, catalog it, and then copy the cataloged object module into the library SYSLIB.

LOGONEX1

LOGONEX1 is *always* invoked by the Natural Security logon program.

Unless modified, LOGONEX1 invokes the Natural Security logon screen (map LOGONM1 or dialog box GLOGONM1; see Logon Screen / Logon Dialog Box).

By modifying LOGONEX1 it is possible to invoke your own logon screens.

LOGONEX2

LOGONEX2 is invoked by the Natural Security logon program under any of the following conditions:

- when "#" is entered as the library ID (or is passed from LOGONEX1 as library ID);
- when no library ID has been specified for the logon and neither a default library nor a private library exists which could have been invoked (see also Logon Without Library ID in the section Logging On).

When LOGONEX2 is invoked, the user ID and password have already been checked and found valid by the logon program. At this point, the Natural system variable *USER contains a valid value, which may be used.

Unless modified, LOGONEX2 consists of nothing but an END statement. On return to the logon program, a valid library ID must be passed to the logon program, otherwise the logon will be rejected. Moreover, it is possible to return one of possibly several IDs using which a user is linked to a library.

As the user ID/password check has already established the validity of the user-specific logon data when LOGONEX2 is invoked, LOGONEX2 may be used to implement additional user-specific procedures or to request user-specific data. For example, the subprogram SECNOTE (see below) may be invoked to read User Security Notes.

When the logon program invokes LOGONEX1 or LOGONEX2, it passes the parameters #USERDUMMY1 and #USERDUMMY2 to the subprograms. Both parameters are provided for your use; their format/length is A8. You may assign values to these parameters in LOGONEX1 and subsequently use these values in LOGONEX2, as they are passed without modification from one subprogram to the other.

LOGONEX3

LOGONEX3 is invoked by the Natural Security logon program under any of the following conditions:

- if there are mailboxes to be displayed;
- if at least one of the parameters #USERDUMMY1 or #USERDUMMY2, passed from LOGONEX1 or LOGONEX2 respectively, is not blank.

LOGONEX3 is invoked immediately after a successful logon and before control is passed from the logon program to the library invoked; when LOGONEX3 is invoked, logon processing is completed except for the display of the mailboxes.

If LOGONEX3 is left unmodified, it performs the subprogram calls necessary for the display of mailboxes.

You may modify LOGONEX3 for one of the following purposes:

- to suppress the display of mailboxes;
- to have non-library-specific processing to be carried out immediately after a successful logon but before any library-specific transactions are executed.

SECNOTE - User Exit for Security Notes

The user exit SECNOTE may be used to read the "Security Notes" of a security profile from outside the Natural Security library SYSSEC.

SECNOTE is a Natural subprogram whose object module is stored in the library SYSTEM. The source code of SECNOTE is not available.

SECNOTE can be invoked from a library by using a CALLNAT statement and will return "Security Notes" to the invoking library. "Security Notes" is that section of a security profile which usually consists of a window of eight lines invoked using "Additional Options". SECNOTE can be applied to User Security Notes, Group Security Notes, Library Security Notes and Special Link Security Notes.

SECNOTE must be invoked with the following three parameters:

Parameter	Explanation
#TYPE (A1)	<p>This parameter is used to specify which Security Notes are to be read. Valid values for #TYPE are:</p> <p>U User Security Notes are to be read. The current content of the Natural system variable *USER determines which user's Security Notes will be read.</p> <p>L Library Security Notes are to be read. The current content of the Natural system variable *APPLIC-ID determines which library's Security Notes will be read.</p> <p>G Group Security Notes are to be read. The current content of the Natural system variable *GROUP determines which user's/group's Security Notes will be read.</p> <p>S Special Link Security Notes are to be read. The current contents of the Natural system variables *GROUP and *APPLIC-ID determine which special link's Security Notes will be read.</p>
#NOTES(A60/8)	On return from SECNOTE, this parameter contains the Security Notes.
#RC (N4)	<p>This parameter contains the return code from SECNOTE. Possible return codes are:</p> <p>0 Security Notes have been read.</p> <p>860 #TYPE contains invalid code.</p> <p>806 Library does not exist (is not defined to Natural Security).</p> <p>861 User has no special link to library.</p> <p>873 User does not exist (is not defined to Natural Security).</p>

The above-mentioned system variables are described in the Natural Reference documentation.

Other User Exits

The library `SYSSEC` contains a number of other user exits called `NSCXXEX1` - where `XX` is the object type: `US` = user, `LI` = library, `DD` = DDM, `FI` = file, or `OB` = external object.

The object-type-specific `NSCXXEX1` user exit is invoked immediately after a maintenance function for an object of the respective type has been performed.

The parameters of these user exits are not modifiable.

For details, please refer to the source code of user exits themselves.

Interface Subprograms

This section covers the following topics:

- Overview of Subprograms
 - Subprogram NSC--L
 - Subprogram NSCCHCK
 - Subprogram NSCDA
 - Subprogram NSCDA-C
 - Subprogram NSCDA-P
 - Subprogram NSCDA-S
 - Subprogram NSCDAU
 - Subprogram NSCDAUC
 - Subprogram NSCDAUP
 - Subprogram NSCDAUS
 - Subprogram NSCDEF
 - Subprogram NSCDU
 - Subprogram NSCFI
 - Subprogram NSCLI
 - Subprogram NSCMA
 - Subprogram NSCOB
 - Subprogram NSCUS
 - Subprogram NSCXR
-

Overview of Subprograms

Natural Security provides a number of subprograms which may be used to access Natural Security maintenance and retrieval functions from outside the Natural Security library SYSSEC.

Use of the subprograms is controlled by means of the general option "Free Access to Functions via Interface Subprograms" (which is described in the section Administrator Services).

On the Main Menu, you enter code "A" for "Administrator Services". The Administrator Services Menu will be displayed.

Note:

Access to Administrator Services may be restricted; see Access to Administrator Services in the section Administrator Services.

On the Administrator Services Menu, you enter code "I" for "Interface subprograms". A list of the subprograms along with examples and explanatory online texts will be displayed.

The following subprograms are available:

Subprograms for Access Verification:

Subprogram	Function
NSC---L	Check if logon to a library is allowed.
NSCCHCK	Check if access to external object is allowed.
NSCDEF	Check if object is defined to Natural Security.

Subprograms for Maintenance:

Subprogram	Function
NSCFI	Maintenance functions for files.
NSCLI	Maintenance functions for libraries (and private libraries).
NSCMA	Maintenance functions for mailboxes.
NSCOB	Maintenance functions for external objects.
NSCUS	Maintenance functions for users.

Subprograms for Retrieval:

Subprogram	Function
NSCDA	Display library security profile.
NSCDA-C	Display command restrictions of library security profile.
NSCDA-P	Display security options, security limits and session parameters of library security profile.
NSCDA-S	Display statement restrictions of library security profile.
NSCDAU	Display special link security profile.
NSCDAUC	Display command restrictions of special link security profile.
NSCDAUP	Display security options, security limits and session parameters of special link security profile.
NSCDAUS	Display statement restrictions of special link security profile.
NSCDU	Display user security profile.
NSCXR	Cross-reference functions.
NSCFI, NSCLI, NSCMA, NSCOB, NSCUS	The display functions (function code "DI" - Display security profile) of these subprograms are considered to be retrieval functions.

Each subprogram that is to be used must be copied into the library in which it is to be executed, or into one of the steplibs concatenated to that library.

Note:

The subprograms cannot be invoked from any of the logon-related user exits described in the section User Exits.

Subprogram NSC---L

The subprogram NSC---L is used to check whether a specific user is allowed to log on to a specific library.

NSC---L is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSC---L' PAPPID PUSERID PRC PPARAM1
```

An example program PGM---L of how to invoke subprogram NSC---L, as well as an explanatory text TXT---L, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGM---L and TXT---L.

Subprogram NSCCHCK

The subprogram NSCCHCK is used to check whether a specific user is allowed to access a specific external object.

NSCCHCK is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCCHCK' PCLASSID PUSERID POBJID PACCESS-TYPE PRC PPARAM1
```

An example program PGMCHCK of how to invoke subprogram NSCCHCK, as well as an explanatory text TXTCHCK, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMCHCK and TXTCHCK.

Subprogram NSCDA

The subprogram NSCDA is used to display the security profile of a library (or private library).

NSCDA is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDA' #PAPPID #PPARM #PRC #PTEXT(*)
```

An example program PGMDA of how to invoke subprogram NSCDA, as well as an explanatory text TXTDA, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDA and TXTDA.

Subprogram NSCDA-C

The subprogram NSCDA-C is used to display the Command Restrictions part of a library (or private library) security profile.

NSCDA-C is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDA-C' #PAPPLID #PRC #PTYPE #PPARM1
```

An example program PGMDA-C of how to invoke subprogram NSCDA-C, as well as an explanatory text TXTDA-C, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDA-C and TXTDA-C.

Subprogram NSCDA-P

The subprogram NSCDA-P is used to display the Security Options, Security Limits and Session Parameters parts of a library (or private library) security profile.

NSCDA-P is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDA-P' #PAPPLID #PRC #PTYPE #PPARM1 #POPRBS(*)
```

An example program PGMDA-P of how to invoke subprogram NSCDA-P, as well as an explanatory text TXTDA-P, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDA-P and TXTDA-P.

Subprogram NSCDA-S

The subprogram NSCDA-S is used to display the Statement Restrictions part of a library (or private library) security profile.

NSCDA-S is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDA-S' #PAPPLID #PRC #PTYPE #PPARM1
```

An example program PGMDA-S of how to invoke subprogram NSCDA-S, as well as an explanatory text TXTDA-S, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDA-S and TXTDA-S.

Subprogram NSCDAU

The subprogram NSCDAU is used the security profile of a special link.

NSCDAU is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDAU' #PAPPLID #PUSERID #PRC #PPARM1 #PPARM2 #PPARM3 #PTEXT(*)
```

An example program PGMDAU of how to invoke subprogram NSCDAU, as well as an explanatory text TXTDAU, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDAU and TXTDAU.

Subprogram NSCDAUC

The subprogram NSCDAUC is used to display the Command Restrictions part of a special link security profile.

NSCDAUC is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDAUC' #PAPPLID #PUSERID #PRC #PPARM1
```

An example program PGMDAUC of how to invoke subprogram NSCDAUC, as well as an explanatory text TXTDAUC, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDAUC and TXTDAUC.

Subprogram NSCDAUP

The subprogram NSCDAUP is used to used to display the Security Options, Security Limits and Session Parameters parts of a special link security profile.

NSCDAUP is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDAUP' #PAPPLID #PUSERID #PRC #PPARM1 #POPRBS(*)
```

An example program PGMDAUP of how to invoke subprogram NSCDAUP, as well as an explanatory text TXTDAUP, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDAUP and TXTDAUP.

Subprogram NSCDAUS

The subprogram NSCDAUS is used to display the Statement Restrictions part of a special link security profile.

NSCDAUS is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDAUS' #PAPPLID #PUSERID #PRC #PPARM1
```

An example program PGMDAUS of how to invoke subprogram NSCDAUS, as well as an explanatory text TXTDAUS, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDAUS and TXTDAUS.

Subprogram NSCDEF

The subprogram NSCDEF is used to check whether a specific object is defined under Natural Security, i.e. whether a security profile for the object exists.

NSCDEF is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDEF' POBJID POBJTYPE PRC
```

An example program PGMDEF of how to invoke subprogram NSCDEF, as well as an explanatory text TXTDEF, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDEF and TXTDEF.

Subprogram NSCDU

The subprogram NSCDU is used to display a user security profile.

NSCDU is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCDU' #PUSERID #PPARM #PRC #PPARM1 #PPARM2 #PPARM3 #PTEXT(*)
```

An example program PGMDU of how to invoke subprogram NSCDU, as well as an explanatory text TXTDU, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMDU and TXTDU.

Subprogram NSCFI

This subprogram is only available on mainframe computers, and it can only be applied to file security profiles. For DDM security profiles, you use the subprogram NSCLI (see below).

The subprogram NSCFI is used to perform maintenance/retrieval functions for file security profiles from outside of the library SYSSEC.

NSCFI is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCFI' PFUNCTION PFILEID PFILEID2 PRC PPFKEY(*)
          PPARM PPARM1 PPARM2 PTEXT(*)
```

The sample programs PGMFI nnn showing how to invoke subprogram NSCFI, as well as explanatory texts TXTFI nnn , are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMFI nnn and TXTFI nnn .

The first parameter (PFUNCTION) has to be filled with the function code for the desired function. The following functions are available:

Code	Function
AD	Add file
CL	Cancel link between library and file
CO	Copy file
DE	Delete file
DI	Display file
MO	Modify file (including all components of its security profile)
RE	Establish read-link between library and file
UP	Establish update-link between library and file

Subprogram NSCLI

The subprogram NSCLI is used to perform maintenance/retrieval functions for library (or private library) security profiles from outside of library SYSSEC.

NSCLI is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCLI' PFUNCTION PLIBID PLIBID2 PLIBTYPE PRC PPFKEY(*)
          PPARM PPARM1 PPARM2 PTEXT(*) PPARM3 PPARM4
          PPARM5 PPARM6 POPRB(*)
```

Example programs *PGMLInnn* of how to invoke subprogram NSCLI, as well as explanatory texts *TXTLInnn*, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

Example programs *PGMDDMnn* of how to invoke NSCLI with function code "MD", as well as explanatory texts *TXTDMMnn*, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of *PGMLInnn*, *TXTLInnn*, *PGMDDMnn* and *TXTDMMnn*.

The first parameter (PFUNCTION) has to be filled with the function code for the desired function. The following functions are available:

Code	Function
AD	Add library
CL	Cancel link between user and library
CO	Copy library
DE	Delete library
DI	Display library
DL	Display special link between user and library
DM	Display allowed/disallowed modules
ET	Get library ID via ETID
LK	Link user to library
MD	Maintain DDM profile; see also below (this function is not available on mainframes)
MM	Modify allowed/disallowed modules
MO	Modify library (including all components of its security profile)
SL	Establish special link between user and library
TL	Temporarily lock link between user and library

If PFUNCTION is filled with function code "MD", the PSUBFUNC part of the parameter PPARM has to be filled with the code for the desired subfunction. The following subfunctions are available:

Code	Subfunction
AD	Add DDM profile
CL	Cancel link between library and DDM profile
CO	Copy DDM profile
DE	Delete DDM profile
DI	Display DDM profile
MO	Modify DDM profile
RE	Establish read-link between library and DDM profile
UP	Establish update-link between library and DDM profile

Subprogram NSCMA

The subprogram NSCMA is used to perform maintenance/retrieval functions for mailbox security profiles from outside of the library SYSSEC.

NSCMA is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCMA' PFUNCTION POBJID POBJID2 PRC PPFKEY(*)
          PPARAM PPARAM1 PPARAM2 PTEXT1(*) PTEXT2(*)
```

Example programs PGMMAnnn showing how to invoke subprogram NSCMA, as well as explanatory texts TXTMAAnnn, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMMAnnn and TXTMAAnnn.

The first parameter (PFUNCTION) has to be filled with the function code for the desired function. The following functions are available:

Code	Function
AD	Add mailbox
CO	Copy mailbox
DE	Delete mailbox
DI	Display mailbox
MO	Modify mailbox (including all components of its security profile)
RE	Rename mailbox

Subprogram NSCOB

The subprogram NSCOB is used to perform maintenance/retrieval functions for external object security profiles from outside of library SYSSEC.

NSCOB is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCOB' PFUNCTION PCLASSID POBJID POBJID2 PRC PPFKEY(*)
          PPARAM PPARAM1 PPARAM2 PTEXT(*)
```

Example programs PGMOB nnn of how to invoke subprogram NSCOB, as well as explanatory texts TXTOB nnn , are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMOB nnn and TXTOB nnn .

The first parameter (PFUNCTION) has to be filled with the function code for the desired function. The following functions are available:

Code	Function
AD	Add external object
CL	Cancel link between user and external object
CO	Copy external object
DE	Delete external object
DI	Display external object
DL	Display link between user and external object
LK	Link user to external object
MO	Modify external object (including all components of its security profile)

Subprogram NSCUS

The subprogram NSCUS is used to perform maintenance/retrieval functions for user security profiles from outside of library SYSSEC.

Note:

NSCUS cannot be used for private libraries which may be attached to user security profiles; for maintenance/retrieval of private libraries, you use subprogram NSCLI.

NSCUS is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCUS' PFUNCTION PUSERID PUSERID2 PRC PPFKEY(*)
          PPARM PPARM1 PPARM2 PTEXT(*) PPARM3 PPARM4
```

Example programs PGMUS nnn of how to invoke subprogram NSCUS, as well as explanatory texts TXTUS nnn , are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMUS nnn and TXTUS nnn .

The first parameter (PFUNCTION) has to be filled with the function code for the desired function. The following functions are available:

Code	Function
AD	Add user
AM	Multiple add user
CO	Copy user
DE	Delete user
DI	Display user
EG	Edit group members
ET	Get user ID via ETID
MO	Modify user (including all components of his/her security profile)

For function code "EG", the following subfunctions are available:

Code	Subfunction
AD	Add users to a group
DE	Delete users from a group
LI	List group members

Subprogram NSCXR

The subprogram NSCXR is used to perform cross-reference functions for security profiles from outside of library SYSSEC.

NSCXR is invoked as follows:

```
CALLNAT 'NSCXR' POBJ-TYPE POBJ-ID PLINK-ID PRC SUB-TYPE PPARAM PPARAM2(*)
```

Example programs PGMXR*nnn* of how to invoke subprogram NSCXR, as well as explanatory texts TXTXR*nnn*, are provided in source form in the library SYSSEC.

The individual CALLNAT parameters are explained in the source codes of PGMXR*nnn* and TXTXR*nnn*.

The first parameter (POBJ-TYPE) has to be filled with the code for the type of object for which a function is to be performed:

Code	Object Type
US	User
LI	Library
DD	DDM (this object type is not available on mainframes)
FI	File (this object type is only available on mainframes)
MA	Mailbox
LE	Logon error record
LR	Logon record
ST	Steplib
UT	Utility
CP	Command processor
PE	Predict external object (this object type is only available if Predict is installed)
PF	Predict function (this object type is only available if Predict is installed)
PL	Predict 3GL library (this object type is only available if Predict is installed)
PO	Predict documentation object (this object type is only available if Predict is installed)

For a command processor, NSCXR will list all libraries and users for the command processor. For each of the four Predict object types, NSCXR will list all objects of that type. For all other object types listed above, the following functions can be performed by filling the parameter SUB-TYPE with one of the following function codes:

Functions Available for a User (US):

Code	Function
*	List all users.
A	List all users of type ADMINISTRATOR.
P	List all users of type PERSON.
M	List all users of type MEMBER.
T	List all users of type TERMINAL.
G	List all users of type GROUP.
B	List all users of type BATCH.
GR	List all groups the user belongs to.
GP	List all privileged groups the user belongs to.
GM	List all users contained in the group.
BU	List all users in whose security profiles the batch user ID is specified.
NI	Retrieve the user ID belonging to a specified user name.
LA	List all libraries available to the user.
LL	List all libraries to which the user is linked.
LD	List all libraries to which the user is linked directly.
LG	List all libraries to which the user is linked by means of a group.
LP	List all libraries to which the user is linked by means of a privileged group.
OW	List all security profiles owned by the user.
DD	List all DDMs available to the user (this function is not available on mainframes).
DL	List all DDMs available to the user by means of a special link (this function is not available on mainframes).
FI	List all files to which the user's private library is linked (this function is only available on mainframes).
UT	List all utility profiles which apply to the user.

Functions Available for a Library (LI):

Code	Function
*	List all libraries and users' private libraries.
L	List all libraries.
U	List all users' private libraries.
NI	Retrieve the library ID belonging to a specified library name.
DD	List all DDMs to which the library is linked (this function is not available on mainframes).
LD	List all DDMs to which the library is linked by means of a special link (this function is not available on mainframes).
FI	List all files to which the library is linked (this function is only available on mainframes).
NO	List allowed/disallowed modules.
US	List all users linked to the library.
UT	List all utility profiles which apply to the library.
CP	List all command processors for the library.

Functions Available for a DDM (DD):

Code	Function
*	List all defined DDMs (that is, for which security profiles exist).
UN	List all undefined DDMs (that is, for which no security profiles exist).
DD	List all defined and undefined DDMs.
P	List all DDMs with external status PUBLIC.
A	List all DDMs with external status ACCESS.
U	List all DDMs with external status PRIVATE.
ND	List all DDM security profiles for which no corresponding DDMs exist.
LI	List all libraries which are linked to the DDM.
US	List all users which are linked to the DDM.
SL	List all DDM definitions in special link security profiles.
X	List all DDM definitions in library and special link security profiles.

Functions Available for a File (FI):

Code	Function
PU	List files of type PUBLIC.
AC	List files of type ACCESS.
UP	List files of type PRIVATE.
DD	List files with existing DDM.
ND	List files with no DDM.
UN	List undefined files.
LI	List libraries to which the specified file is linked.
US	List users whose private libraries are linked to the specified file.

Functions Available for a Mailbox (MA):

Code	Function
LI	List all libraries to which the mailbox is assigned.
US	List all users to which the mailbox is assigned.

Functions Available for Logon Error Records (LE):

Code	Function
P	List logon error records, in order of TP user IDs.
T	List logon error records, in order of terminal IDs.

Functions Available for Logon Records (LR):

Code	Function
L	List logon records, in order of library IDs.
U	List logon records, in order of user IDs.
LX	List logon records to undefined libraries (in order of library IDs).
UX	List logon records of undefined users (in order of user IDs).

Functions Available for Steplibs (ST):

Code	Function
*	List all steplibs.
LK	List protected steplibs.
NN	List public steplibs.
SL	List special linked steplibs.

Functions Available for Utilities (UT):

Code	Function
LI	List all library-specific utility profiles defined for the utility.
US	List all user-specific utility profiles defined for the utility.
UT	List all utility profiles defined for the utility.
<i>blank</i>	List all utility profiles defined for all utilities.

Add-On Products And Plug-Ins

This section contains information on the protection of various Natural add-on products by Natural Security and the handling of plug-ins in a Natural Security environment. It contains information on:

- Plug-Ins under Natural Security
 - SYSDIC under Natural Security
 - SYSAOS under Natural Security
-

Plug-Ins under Natural Security

The Natural Studio user interface is extensible by so-called "plug-ins". If plug-ins are used in an environment protected by Natural Security, the following prerequisites must be met:

Library Profiles for System Libraries

For the Natural plug-in manager (which is a plug-in itself) and for every plug-in to be used, a library security profile has to be defined. For plug-ins delivered together with Natural, pre-defined system-library profiles are provided. To activate these, you use the Administrator Services function "Definition of system libraries".

The following plug-in system libraries are provided:

Library	Contents
SYSPLMAN	The plug-in for the plug-in manager.
SYSEXPLG	A sample plug-in.
SYSPLXRC	The plug-in for the cross-reference GUI client.

User Profiles

When a user invokes a plug-in, the Natural plug-in manager starts a second Natural session with automatic logon (profile parameter AUTO=ON). For the automatic logon to be successful, a user who is to use a plug-in must have either a default library or a private library specified in his/her security profile.

Natural Parameter File

When a user invokes a plug-in, the Natural plug-in manager starts a second Natural session using the parameter file NATPARM. If the user's Natural session uses a parameter file other than NATPARM, the system-file specifications for FNAT, FSEC and FUSER in the NATPARM parameter file must match those of the parameter file used by the user session in a Natural Security environment.

SYSDIC under Natural Security

On mainframe computers, the Predict library SYSDIC (which is described in the Predict documentation) may also be defined and its use controlled by Natural Security.

In the security profile of the library SYSDIC, the user exit NSCPRD01 must be specified. This user exit is entered into the security profile by executing the program NSCPRDAX in the library SYSSEC; the user exit is written into the security profile and *cannot* be overwritten there. The program must be executed to write the user exit into the security profile, otherwise you will not be able to use under Natural Security those Predict functions which use Adabas Online Services (AOS) facilities. (To delete NSCPRD01 from the security profile of SYSDIC, the program NSCPRDDX may be executed in library SYSSEC.)

After the user exit NSCPRD01 has been written into the security profile, no Predict functions will be available until Predict security profiles are defined.

You have to perform the following steps:

1. Create a security profile for the library SYSDIC (Add Library).
2. Execute program NSCPRDAX.
3. Invoke the Modify Library function for the library SYSDIC.

Even if you do not modify anything in the security profile of SYSDIC, you must perform this third step so as to confirm the entry of the user exit, because otherwise Natural Security will consider the execution of NSCPRDAX an illegal manipulation of SYSDIC's security profile and no-one will be able to log on to SYSDIC. (The same applies if NSCPRDDX is executed.)

The library SYSDIC must be defined as people-protected.

When you select "User Exit" from the Additional Options of SYSDIC's Library Profile, an additional screen "Predict/AOS Security Profile" will be displayed; on this screen you may specify who is to be AOS security administrator for which database. For each database you can only specify one AOS security administrator; this may be a user of type ADMINISTRATOR, PERSON, MEMBER, or a GROUP (it need not be a Natural Security administrator). The user must be linked to the library SYSDIC before he/she can be specified as AOS security administrator. The user (or group of users) specified may use the AOS-related Predict functions for the corresponding database.

For further information on Predict and its AOS-related functions, and on Predict under Natural Security, please refer to the Predict documentation.

SYSAOS under Natural Security

On mainframe computers, the Adabas Online Services library SYSAOS (which is described in the Adabas documentation) may also be defined and its use controlled by Natural Security.

The library SYSAOS must be defined as people-protected.

In the security profile of the library SYSAOS, the user exit NSCAOSE1 must be specified. This user exit is entered into the security profile by executing the program NSCAOSAX in the library SYSSEC; the user exit is written into the security profile and *cannot* be overwritten there. The program must be executed to write the user exit into the security profile, otherwise you will not be able to use the Security Maintenance section of Adabas Online Services under Natural Security. (To delete NSCAOS01 from the security profile of SYSAOS, the program NSCAOSDX may be executed in the library SYSSEC.)

After the user exit NSCAOS01 has been written into the security profile, no Adabas Online Services functions will be available until Adabas Online Services security profiles are defined.

You have to perform the following steps:

1. Create a security profile for the library SYSAOS (Add Library).
2. Execute program NSCAOSAX.
3. Invoke the Modify Library function for the library SYSAOS.

Even if you do not modify anything in the security profile of SYSAOS, you must perform this third step so as to confirm the entry of the user exit, because otherwise Natural Security will consider the execution of NSCAOSAX an illegal manipulation of SYSAOS's security profile and no-one will be able to log on to SYSAOS. The same applies if NSCAOSDX is executed.

When you select "User Exit" from the Additional Options of SYSAOS's Library Profile, an additional screen "Adabas Online Services Security Profile" will be displayed; on this screen you may specify who is to be Adabas Online Services security administrator for which database. For each database you can only specify one Adabas Online Services security administrator; this may be a user of type ADMINISTRATOR, PERSON, MEMBER, or a GROUP (it need not be a Natural Security administrator). The user must be linked to the library SYSAOS before he/she can be specified as Adabas Online Services security administrator. The user (or group of users) specified may use the Security Maintenance section of Adabas Online Services for the corresponding database.

For further information on Adabas Online Services, please refer to the Adabas documentation.

System Libraries And Utilities - Old Protection Mechanism



Natural Security provides two mechanisms to control the use of Natural utilities: the old mechanism is described in this section, the new mechanism is described in the section Protecting Natural Utilities.

It is strongly recommended that the new mechanism be used, as it provides more efficient protection of utility functions. The old mechanism will be removed with one of the next releases of Natural Security.

This section describes the considerations that apply to the protection by Natural Security of the following utilities/commands:

- NATUNLD/NATLOAD under Natural Security
- SYSERR under Natural Security
- SYSMAIN under Natural Security
- SCAN Command under Natural Security

NATUNLD/NATLOAD under Natural Security

Restricting the Use of NATUNLD/NATLOAD Itself

The availability of the Natural unloading and loading utilities NATUNLD and NATLOAD as such cannot be controlled by Natural Security. However, you can control the use of these utilities for loading objects from and into specific libraries, as described in the following section.

Unloading/Loading of Libraries/Private Libraries

The permission to load objects from and into libraries and private libraries with NATLOAD and NATUNLD respectively is controlled by the setting of the "Utilities" option in the security profile of a library/private library.

Unloading/Loading Permission for Libraries

In a library's security profile you may specify the "Utilities" option. This option may take one of the following values:

N	No protection - The contents of the library may be unloaded/loaded by anybody.
O	Permission for Owners - Only the owners of the library unload/load its contents; if no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may do so.
P	Permission under Protection rules - The People/Terminal protection of the library applies: only users who may use the library - and only under the conditions under which they may use it - may unload/load its contents.

Unloading/Loading Permission for Private Libraries

Every user is allowed to unload/load the contents of his/her own private library.

Moreover, you may specify the "Utilities" option in the private library's security profile. This option may take one of the following values:

N	No protection - The contents of the private library may be unloaded/loaded by anybody.
O	Permission for Owners - In addition to the user him-/herself, only the owners of the user's security profile may unload/load the private library's contents; if no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may do so.
P	Password protection - A user may unload/load the contents of another user's private library only after entering that other user's password on a countersignature screen provided for that purpose.

SYSERR under Natural Security

The Natural error message maintenance utility SYSERR may also be defined and its use controlled by Natural Security.

Note:

Under Natural Security, the online use of the SYSERR program ERRULDUS for the unloading of messages on mainframe computers is only available to users of type ADMINISTRATOR (regardless of the setting the "Utilities" option described below).

Restricting the Use of SYSERR Itself

As far as defining and protecting is concerned, you may treat SYSERR like any other library.

As for the use of SYSERR itself, the same rules apply as for any other library defined under Natural Security; that is, if SYSERR is people-protected and/or terminal-protected, any user who is to use SYSERR must be linked accordingly. In other words, a user must be able to log on to SYSERR in order to use it.

Message Maintenance in Libraries/Private Libraries

The permission for maintaining with SYSERR library-specific error messages (user messages) in libraries and private libraries is controlled by the setting of the "Utilities" option (see General Options in the section Library Maintenance) in the security profile of a library/private library.

Maintenance Permission for Libraries

In a library's security profile you may specify the "Utilities" option. This option may take one of the following values:

N	No protection - The library's error messages may be maintained in SYSERR by anybody.
O	Permission for Owners - Only the owners of the library may maintain its error messages with SYSERR; if no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may do so.
P	Permission under Protection rules - The People/Terminal protection of the library applies: only users who may use the library - and only under the conditions under which they may use it - may maintain its error messages with SYSERR.

Maintenance Permission for Private Libraries

Every user is allowed to maintain the error messages in his/her own private library.

Moreover, you may specify the "Utilities" option in the private library's security profile. This option may take one of the following values:

N	No protection - The private library's error messages may be maintained in SYSERR by anybody.
O	Permission for Owners - In addition to the user him-/herself, only the owners of the user's security profile may maintain the private library's error messages; if no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may do so.
P	Password protection - A user may maintain error messages in another user's private library only after entering that other user's password on a countersignature screen provided for that purpose.

SYSMAIN under Natural Security

The Natural object maintenance utility SYSMAIN may also be defined and its use controlled by Natural Security.

Please note that the SYSMAIN utility is not identical on all platforms.

Restricting the Use of SYSMAIN Itself

As far as defining and protecting is concerned, you may treat SYSMAIN like any other library.

As for the use of SYSMAIN itself, the same rules apply as for any other library defined under Natural Security; that is, if SYSMAIN is people-protected and/or terminal-protected, any user who is to use SYSMAIN must be linked accordingly. In other words, a user must be able to log on to SYSMAIN in order to use it.

On mainframes, you may also restrict the use of SYSMAIN, i.e. the availability of functions provided by SYSMAIN, by disallowing modules.

SYSMAIN Maintenance of Libraries/Private Libraries

The permission for SYSMAIN maintenance of libraries and private libraries is controlled by the setting of the "Utilities" option (see General Options in the section Library Maintenance) in the security profile of a library/private library.

Maintenance Permission for Libraries

In a library's security profile you may specify the "Utilities" option. This option may take one of the following values:

N	No protection - The library may be maintained with SYSMAIN by anybody.
O	Permission for Owners - Only the owners of the library may maintain it with SYSMAIN; if no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may do so.
P	Permission under Protection rules - The People/Terminal protection of the library applies: only users who may use the library - and only under the conditions under which they may use it - may maintain it with SYSMAIN.

Batch Processing

When using SYSMAIN in batch mode, only those libraries for which no countersignature from a co-owner is required for maintenance permission can be maintained (as countersignatures are not allowed in batch mode).

Maintenance Permission for Private Libraries

Every user is allowed to maintain his/her own private library.

Moreover, you may specify the "Utilities" option in the private library's security profile. This option may take one of the following values:

N	No protection - The private library may be maintained with SYSMAIN by anybody.
O	Permission for Owners - In addition to the user him-/herself, only the owners of the user's security profile may maintain the private library with SYSMAIN; if no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may do so.
P	Password protection - A user may maintain another user's private library only after entering that other user's password on a countersignature screen provided for that purpose.

Batch Processing

When using SYSMAIN in batch mode, only those private libraries for which no countersignature from a co-owner is required for maintenance permission can be maintained (as countersignatures are not allowed in batch mode). If the "Utilities" option is set to "P", no user may maintain another user's private library in batch mode (as no password can be entered in batch mode).

SYSMAIN Functions LIST and FIND

When using the SYSMAIN functions LIST and FIND, a user will obtain a list of only those libraries/private libraries which he/she is allowed to maintain with SYSMAIN.

SCAN Command under Natural Security

The use of the Natural system command SCAN may also be controlled for each library (or private library) by Natural Security.

You can either disallow the SCAN command altogether for a library via the "Command Restrictions" option in the library security profile, or you can control its use via the "Utilities" option in the library security profile.

- If you mark the SCAN command with "Y" on the Command Restrictions screen of a library profile, the use of the SCAN command within that library is controlled by the setting of the "Utilities" option in the library profile, as explained below.
- If you mark the SCAN command with "N" on the Command Restrictions screen of a library profile, the SCAN command cannot be used within that library (regardless of the setting of the "Utilities" option).

Where and how both options are set is described in section Library Maintenance under General Options and Command Restrictions respectively.

SCAN Permission for Libraries

In a library's security profile you may specify the "Utilities" option. This option may take one of the following values:

N	No protection - The SCAN command may be used in the library by anybody.
O	Permission for Owners - Only the owners of the library may use the SCAN command; if no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may use it.
P	Permission under Protection rules - The People/Terminal protection of the library applies: only users who may use the library - and only under the conditions under which they may use it - may use the SCAN command.

Batch Processing

When using the SCAN command in batch mode, it can only be used for those libraries for which no countersignature from a co-owner is required for maintenance permission (as countersignatures are not allowed in batch mode).

SCAN Permission for Private Libraries

Every user is allowed to use the SCAN command in his/her own private library.

Moreover, you may specify the "Utilities" option in the private library's security profile. This option may take one of the following values:

N	No protection - The SCAN command may be used in the private library by anybody.
O	Permission for Owners - In addition to the user him-/herself, only the owners of the user's security profile use the SCAN command; if no owner is specified, any user of type ADMINISTRATOR may use it.
P	Password protection - A user may use the SCAN command in another user's private library only after entering that other user's password on a countersignature screen provided for that purpose.

Batch Processing

When using the SCAN command in batch mode, it can only be used for those private libraries for which no countersignature from a co-owner is required for maintenance permission (as countersignatures are not allowed in batch mode). If the "Utilities" option is set to "P", no user may use the SCAN command in another user's private library in batch mode (as no password can be entered in batch mode).